^{106TH CONGRESS} 2D SESSION H.R. 5660

To reauthorize and amend the Commodity Exchange Act to promote legal certainty, enhance competition, and reduce systemic risk in markets for futures and over-the-counter derivatives, and for other purposes.

IN THE HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES

DECEMBER 14, 2000

Mr. EWING (for himself, Mr. COMBEST, Mr. LEACH, Mr. LAFALCE, and Mr. BLILEY) introduced the following bill; which was referred to the Committee on Agriculture, and in addition to the Committees on Banking and Financial Services, Commerce, and the Judiciary, for a period to be subsequently determined by the Speaker, in each case for consideration of such provisions as fall within the jurisdiction of the committee concerned

A BILL

- To reauthorize and amend the Commodity Exchange Act to promote legal certainty, enhance competition, and reduce systemic risk in markets for futures and over-thecounter derivatives, and for other purposes.
 - 1 Be it enacted by the Senate and House of Representa-
 - 2 tives of the United States of America in Congress assembled,

3 SECTION 1. SHORT TITLE; TABLE OF CONTENTS.

- 4 (a) SHORT TITLE.—This Act may be cited as the
- 5 "Commodity Futures Modernization Act of 2000".

1 (b) TABLE OF CONTENTS.—The table of contents of

2 this Act is as follows:

Sec. 1. Short title; table of contents.

Sec. 2. Purposes.

TITLE I—COMMODITY FUTURES MODERNIZATION

- Sec. 101. Definitions.
- Sec. 102. Agreements, contracts, and transactions in foreign currency, government securities, and certain other commodities.
- Sec. 103. Legal certainty for excluded derivative transactions.
- Sec. 104. Excluded electronic trading facilities.
- Sec. 105. Hybrid instruments; swap transactions.
- Sec. 106. Transactions in exempt commodities.
- Sec. 107. Application of commodity futures laws.
- Sec. 108. Protection of the public interest.
- Sec. 109. Prohibited transactions.
- Sec. 110. Designation of boards of trade as contract markets.
- Sec. 111. Derivatives transaction execution facilities.
- Sec. 112. Derivatives clearing.
- Sec. 113. Common provisions applicable to registered entities.
- Sec. 114. Exempt boards of trade.
- Sec. 115. Suspension or revocation of designation as contract market.
- Sec. 116. Authorization of appropriations.
- Sec. 117. Preemption.
- Sec. 118. Predispute resolution agreements for institutional customers.
- Sec. 119. Consideration of costs and benefits and antitrust laws.
- Sec. 120. Contract enforcement between eligible counterparties.
- Sec. 121. Special procedures to encourage and facilitate bona fide hedging by agricultural producers.
- Sec. 122. Rule of construction.
- Sec. 123. Technical and conforming amendments.
- Sec. 124. Privacy.
- Sec. 125. Report to Congress.
- Sec. 126. International activities of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission.

TITLE II—COORDINATED REGULATION OF SECURITY FUTURES PRODUCTS

Subtitle A—Securities Law Amendments

- Sec. 201. Definitions under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.
- Sec. 202. Regulatory relief for markets trading security futures products.
- Sec. 203. Regulatory relief for intermediaries trading security futures products.
- Sec. 204. Special provisions for interagency cooperation.
- Sec. 205. Maintenance of market integrity for security futures products.
- Sec. 206. Special provisions for the trading of security futures products.
- Sec. 207. Clearance and settlement.
- Sec. 208. Amendments relating to registration and disclosure issues under the Securities Act of 1933 and the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.
- Sec. 209. Amendments to the Investment Company Act of 1940 and the Investment Advisers Act of 1940.

- 3
- Sec. 210. Preemption of State laws.

Subtitle B—Amendments to the Commodity Exchange Act

- Sec. 251. Jurisdiction of Securities and Exchange Commission; other provisions.
- Sec. 252. Application of the Commodity Exchange Act to national securities exchanges and national securities associations that trade security futures.
- Sec. 253. Notification of investigations and enforcement actions.

TITLE III—LEGAL CERTAINTY FOR SWAP AGREEMENTS

- Sec. 301. Swap agreement.
- Sec. 302. Amendments to the Securities Act of 1933.
- Sec. 303. Amendments to the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.
- Sec. 304. Savings provision.

TITLE IV—REGULATORY RESPONSIBILITY FOR BANK PRODUCTS

- Sec. 401. Short title.
- Sec. 402. Definitions.
- Sec. 403. Exclusion of identified banking products commonly offered on or before December 5, 2000.
- Sec. 404. Exclusion of certain identified banking products offered by banks after December 5, 2000.
- Sec. 405. Exclusion of certain other identified banking products.
- Sec. 406. Administration of the predominance test.
- Sec. 407. Exclusion of covered swap agreements.
- Sec. 408. Contract enforcement.

1 SEC. 2. PURPOSES.

- 2 The purposes of this Act are—
- 3 (1) to reauthorize the appropriation for the
- 4 Commodity Futures Trading Commission;
- 5 (2) to streamline and eliminate unnecessary
 6 regulation for the commodity futures exchanges and
 7 other entities regulated under the Commodity Ex8 change Act;
- 9 (3) to transform the role of the Commodity Fu10 tures Trading Commission to oversight of the fu-
- 11 tures markets;

(4) to provide a statutory and regulatory frame work for allowing the trading of futures on securi ties;

4 (5) to clarify the jurisdiction of the Commodity
5 Futures Trading Commission over certain retail for6 eign exchange transactions and bucket shops that
7 may not be otherwise regulated;

8 (6) to promote innovation for futures and de9 rivatives and to reduce systemic risk by enhancing
10 legal certainty in the markets for certain futures and
11 derivatives transactions;

(7) to reduce systemic risk and provide greater
stability to markets during times of market disorder
by allowing the clearing of transactions in over-thecounter derivatives through appropriately regulated
clearing organizations; and

17 (8) to enhance the competitive position of
18 United States financial institutions and financial
19 markets.

20 TITLE I—COMMODITY FUTURES 21 MODERNIZATION

22 SEC. 101. DEFINITIONS.

23 Section 1a of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C.
24 1a) is amended—

| 1 | (1) by redesignating paragraphs (1) through |
|----|---|
| 2 | (7), (8) through $(12), (13)$ through $(15), and (16)$ |
| 3 | as paragraphs (2) through (8) , (16) through (20) , |
| 4 | (22) through (24) , and (28) , respectively; |
| 5 | (2) by inserting before paragraph (2) (as redes- |
| 6 | ignated by paragraph (1)) the following: |
| 7 | "(1) ALTERNATIVE TRADING SYSTEM.—The |
| 8 | term 'alternative trading system' means an organiza- |
| 9 | tion, association, or group of persons that— |
| 10 | "(A) is registered as a broker or dealer |
| 11 | pursuant to section 15(b) of the Securities Ex- |
| 12 | change Act of 1934 (except paragraph (11) |
| 13 | thereof); |
| 14 | "(B) performs the functions commonly |
| 15 | performed by an exchange (as defined in section |
| 16 | 3(a)(1) of the Securities Exchange Act of |
| 17 | 1934); |
| 18 | "(C) does not— |
| 19 | "(i) set rules governing the conduct of |
| 20 | subscribers other than the conduct of such |
| 21 | subscribers' trading on the alternative |
| 22 | trading system; or |
| 23 | "(ii) discipline subscribers other than |
| 24 | by exclusion from trading; and |

| 1 | "(D) is exempt from the definition of the |
|----|--|
| 2 | term 'exchange' under such section $3(a)(1)$ by |
| 3 | rule or regulation of the Securities and Ex- |
| 4 | change Commission on terms that require com- |
| 5 | pliance with regulations of its trading func- |
| 6 | tions."; |
| 7 | (3) by striking paragraph (2) (as redesignated |
| 8 | by paragraph (1)) and inserting the following: |
| 9 | "(2) BOARD OF TRADE.—The term 'board of |
| 10 | trade' means any organized exchange or other trad- |
| 11 | ing facility."; |
| 12 | (4) by inserting after paragraph (8) (as redesig- |
| 13 | nated by paragraph (1)) the following: |
| 14 | "(9) Derivatives clearing organization.— |
| 15 | "(A) IN GENERAL.—The term 'derivatives |
| 16 | clearing organization' means a clearinghouse, |
| 17 | clearing association, clearing corporation, or |
| 18 | similar entity, facility, system, or organization |
| 19 | that, with respect to an agreement, contract, or |
| 20 | transaction— |
| 21 | "(i) enables each party to the agree- |
| 22 | ment, contract, or transaction to sub- |
| 23 | stitute, through novation or otherwise, the |
| 24 | credit of the derivatives clearing organiza- |
| 25 | tion for the credit of the parties; |

| 1 | "(ii) arranges or provides, on a multi- |
|----|--|
| 2 | lateral basis, for the settlement or netting |
| 3 | of obligations resulting from such agree- |
| 4 | ments, contracts, or transactions executed |
| 5 | by participants in the derivatives clearing |
| 6 | organization; or |
| 7 | "(iii) otherwise provides clearing serv- |
| 8 | ices or arrangements that mutualize or |
| 9 | transfer among participants in the deriva- |
| 10 | tives clearing organization the credit risk |
| 11 | arising from such agreements, contracts, |
| 12 | or transactions executed by the partici- |
| 13 | pants. |
| 14 | "(B) EXCLUSIONS.—The term 'derivatives |
| 15 | clearing organization' does not include an enti- |
| 16 | ty, facility, system, or organization solely be- |
| 17 | cause it arranges or provides for— |
| 18 | "(i) settlement, netting, or novation of |
| 19 | obligations resulting from agreements, con- |
| 20 | tracts, or transactions, on a bilateral basis |
| 21 | and without a central counterparty; |
| 22 | "(ii) settlement or netting of cash |
| 23 | payments through an interbank payment |
| 24 | system; or |
| | |

| 1 | "(iii) settlement, netting, or novation |
|----|--|
| 2 | of obligations resulting from a sale of a |
| 3 | commodity in a transaction in the spot |
| 4 | market for the commodity. |
| 5 | "(10) Electronic trading facility.—The |
| 6 | term 'electronic trading facility' means a trading fa- |
| 7 | cility that— |
| 8 | "(A) operates by means of an electronic or |
| 9 | telecommunications network; and |
| 10 | "(B) maintains an automated audit trail of |
| 11 | bids, offers, and the matching of orders or the |
| 12 | execution of transactions on the facility. |
| 13 | "(11) ELIGIBLE COMMERCIAL ENTITY.—The |
| 14 | term 'eligible commercial entity' means, with respect |
| 15 | to an agreement, contract or transaction in a |
| 16 | commodity— |
| 17 | "(A) an eligible contract participant de- |
| 18 | scribed in clause (i), (ii), (v), (vii), (viii), or (ix) |
| 19 | of paragraph $(12)(A)$ that, in connection with |
| 20 | its business— |
| 21 | "(i) has a demonstrable ability, di- |
| 22 | rectly or through separate contractual ar- |
| 23 | rangements, to make or take delivery of |
| 24 | the underlying commodity; |

| | 0 |
|----|--|
| 1 | "(ii) incurs risks, in addition to price |
| 2 | risk, related to the commodity; or |
| 3 | "(iii) is a dealer that regularly pro- |
| 4 | vides risk management or hedging services |
| 5 | to, or engages in market-making activities |
| 6 | with, the foregoing entities involving trans- |
| 7 | actions to purchase or sell the commodity |
| 8 | or derivative agreements, contracts, or |
| 9 | transactions in the commodity; |
| 10 | "(B) an eligible contract participant, other |
| 11 | than a natural person or an instrumentality, de- |
| 12 | partment, or agency of a State or local govern- |
| 13 | mental entity, that— |
| 14 | "(i) regularly enters into transactions |
| 15 | to purchase or sell the commodity or deriv- |
| 16 | ative agreements, contracts, or trans- |
| 17 | actions in the commodity; and |
| 18 | "(ii) either— |
| 19 | "(I) in the case of a collective in- |
| 20 | vestment vehicle whose participants |
| 21 | include persons other than— |
| 22 | "(aa) qualified eligible per- |
| 23 | sons, as defined in Commission |
| 24 | rule 4.7(a) (17 CFR 4.7(a)); |
| | |

| 1 | "(bb) accredited investors, |
|----|---|
| 2 | as defined in Regulation D of the |
| 3 | Securities and Exchange Com- |
| 4 | mission under the Securities Act |
| 5 | of 1933 (17 CFR 230.501(a)), |
| 6 | with total assets of $$2,000,000;$ |
| 7 | Oľ |
| 8 | "(cc) qualified purchasers, |
| 9 | as defined in section $2(a)(51)(A)$ |
| 10 | of the Investment Company Act |
| 11 | of 1940; |
| 12 | in each case as in effect on the date |
| 13 | of the enactment of the Commodity |
| 14 | Futures Modernization Act of 2000, |
| 15 | has, or is one of a group of vehicles |
| 16 | under common control or management |
| 17 | having in the aggregate, |
| 18 | \$1,000,000,000 in total assets; or |
| 19 | "(II) in the case of other per- |
| 20 | sons, has, or is one of a group of per- |
| 21 | sons under common control or man- |
| 22 | agement having in the aggregate, |
| 23 | \$100,000,000 in total assets; or |
| | |

| 1 | "(C) such other persons as the Commis- |
|----|---|
| 2 | sion shall determine appropriate and shall des- |
| 3 | ignate by rule, regulation, or order. |
| 4 | "(12) ELIGIBLE CONTRACT PARTICIPANT.—The |
| 5 | term 'eligible contract participant' means— |
| 6 | "(A) acting for its own account— |
| 7 | "(i) a financial institution; |
| 8 | "(ii) an insurance company that is |
| 9 | regulated by a State, or that is regulated |
| 10 | by a foreign government and is subject to |
| 11 | comparable regulation as determined by |
| 12 | the Commission, including a regulated sub- |
| 13 | sidiary or affiliate of such an insurance |
| 14 | company; |
| 15 | "(iii) an investment company subject |
| 16 | to regulation under the Investment Com- |
| 17 | pany Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80a–1 et |
| 18 | seq.) or a foreign person performing a |
| 19 | similar role or function subject as such to |
| 20 | foreign regulation (regardless of whether |
| 21 | each investor in the investment company or |
| 22 | the foreign person is itself an eligible con- |
| 23 | tract participant); |
| 24 | "(iv) a commodity pool that— |

| | 12 |
|----|---|
| 1 | "(I) has total assets exceeding |
| 2 | \$5,000,000; and |
| 3 | "(II) is formed and operated by a |
| 4 | person subject to regulation under |
| 5 | this Act or a foreign person per- |
| 6 | forming a similar role or function sub- |
| 7 | ject as such to foreign regulation (re- |
| 8 | gardless of whether each investor in |
| 9 | the commodity pool or the foreign per- |
| 10 | son is itself an eligible contract partic- |
| 11 | ipant); |
| 12 | "(v) a corporation, partnership, pro- |
| 13 | prietorship, organization, trust, or other |
| 14 | entity— |
| 15 | "(I) that has total assets exceed- |
| 16 | ing \$10,000,000; |
| 17 | "(II) the obligations of which |
| 18 | under an agreement, contract, or |
| 19 | transaction are guaranteed or other- |
| 20 | wise supported by a letter of credit or |
| 21 | keepwell, support, or other agreement |
| 22 | by an entity described in subclause |
| 23 | (I), in clause (i) , (ii) , (iii) , (iv) , or |
| 24 | (vii), or in subparagraph (C); or |
| 25 | "(III) that— |
| | |

| | - |
|----|---|
| 1 | "(aa) has a net worth ex- |
| 2 | ceeding \$1,000,000; and |
| 3 | "(bb) enters into an agree- |
| 4 | ment, contract, or transaction in |
| 5 | connection with the conduct of |
| 6 | the entity's business or to man- |
| 7 | age the risk associated with an |
| 8 | asset or liability owned or in- |
| 9 | curred or reasonably likely to be |
| 10 | owned or incurred by the entity |
| 11 | in the conduct of the entity's |
| 12 | business; |
| 13 | "(vi) an employee benefit plan subject |
| 14 | to the Employee Retirement Income Secu- |
| 15 | rity Act of 1974 (29 U.S.C. 1001 et seq.), |
| 16 | a governmental employee benefit plan, or a |
| 17 | foreign person performing a similar role or |
| 18 | function subject as such to foreign |
| 19 | regulation— |
| 20 | "(I) that has total assets exceed- |
| 21 | ing \$5,000,000; or |
| 22 | "(II) the investment decisions of |
| 23 | which are made by— |
| 24 | "(aa) an investment adviser |
| 25 | or commodity trading advisor |
| | |

| | 11 |
|----|--|
| 1 | subject to regulation under the |
| 2 | Investment Advisers Act of 1940 |
| 3 | (15 U.S.C. 80b–1 et seq.) or this |
| 4 | Act; |
| 5 | "(bb) a foreign person per- |
| 6 | forming a similar role or function |
| 7 | subject as such to foreign regula- |
| 8 | tion; |
| 9 | "(cc) a financial institution; |
| 10 | Oľ |
| 11 | "(dd) an insurance company |
| 12 | described in clause (ii), or a reg- |
| 13 | ulated subsidiary or affiliate of |
| 14 | such an insurance company; |
| 15 | "(vii)(I) a governmental entity (in- |
| 16 | cluding the United States, a State, or a |
| 17 | foreign government) or political subdivision |
| 18 | of a governmental entity; |
| 19 | "(II) a multinational or supranational |
| 20 | government entity; or |
| 21 | "(III) an instrumentality, agency, or |
| 22 | department of an entity described in sub- |
| 23 | clause (I) or (II); |
| 24 | except that such term does not include an |
| 25 | entity, instrumentality, agency, or depart- |

| 1 | ment referred to in subclause (I) or (III) |
|----|--|
| 2 | of this clause unless (aa) the entity, instru- |
| 3 | mentality, agency, or department is a per- |
| 4 | son described in clause (i), (ii), or (iii) of |
| 5 | section $1a(11)(A)$; (bb) the entity, instru- |
| 6 | mentality, agency, or department owns and |
| 7 | invests on a discretionary basis |
| 8 | \$25,000,000 or more in investments; or |
| 9 | (cc) the agreement, contract, or trans- |
| 10 | action is offered by, and entered into with, |
| 11 | an entity that is listed in any of subclauses |
| 12 | (I) through (VI) of section $2(c)(2)(B)(ii)$; |
| 13 | "(viii)(I) a broker or dealer subject to |
| 14 | regulation under the Securities Exchange |
| 15 | Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.) or a |
| 16 | foreign person performing a similar role or |
| 17 | function subject as such to foreign regula- |
| 18 | tion, except that, if the broker or dealer or |
| 19 | foreign person is a natural person or pro- |
| 20 | prietorship, the broker or dealer or foreign |
| 21 | person shall not be considered to be an eli- |
| 22 | gible contract participant unless the broker |
| 23 | or dealer or foreign person also meets the |
| 24 | requirements of clause (v) or (xi); |
| | |

| 1 | "(II) an associated person of a reg- |
|----|---|
| 2 | istered broker or dealer concerning the fi- |
| 3 | nancial or securities activities of which the |
| 4 | registered person makes and keeps records |
| 5 | under section 15C(b) or 17(h) of the Secu- |
| 6 | rities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. |
| 7 | 78o–5(b), 78q(h)); |
| 8 | "(III) an investment bank holding |
| 9 | company (as defined in section 17(i) of the |
| 10 | Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 |
| 11 | U.S.C. 78q(i)); |
| 12 | "(ix) a futures commission merchant |
| 13 | subject to regulation under this Act or a |
| 14 | foreign person performing a similar role or |
| 15 | function subject as such to foreign regula- |
| 16 | tion, except that, if the futures commission |
| 17 | merchant or foreign person is a natural |
| 18 | person or proprietorship, the futures com- |
| 19 | mission merchant or foreign person shall |
| 20 | not be considered to be an eligible contract |
| 21 | participant unless the futures commission |
| 22 | merchant or foreign person also meets the |
| 23 | requirements of clause (v) or (xi); |
| 24 | "(x) a floor broker or floor trader sub- |
| 25 | ject to regulation under this Act in connec- |

| 1 | tion with any transaction that takes place |
|----|---|
| 2 | on or through the facilities of a registered |
| 3 | entity or an exempt board of trade, or any |
| 4 | affiliate thereof, on which such person reg- |
| 5 | ularly trades; or |
| 6 | "(xi) an individual who has total as- |
| 7 | sets in an amount in excess of— |
| 8 | ((I) \$10,000,000; or |
| 9 | "(II) \$5,000,000 and who enters |
| 10 | into the agreement, contract, or trans- |
| 11 | action in order to manage the risk as- |
| 12 | sociated with an asset owned or liabil- |
| 13 | ity incurred, or reasonably likely to be |
| 14 | owned or incurred, by the individual; |
| 15 | "(B)(i) a person described in clause (i), |
| 16 | (ii), (iv), (v), (viii), (ix), or (x) of subparagraph |
| 17 | (A) or in subparagraph (C), acting as broker or |
| 18 | performing an equivalent agency function on |
| 19 | behalf of another person described in subpara- |
| 20 | graph (A) or (C); or |
| 21 | "(ii) an investment adviser subject to regu- |
| 22 | lation under the Investment Advisers Act of |
| 23 | 1940, a commodity trading advisor subject to |
| 24 | regulation under this Act, a foreign person per- |
| 25 | forming a similar role or function subject as |
| | |

| 1 | such to foreign regulation, or a person de- |
|----|--|
| 2 | scribed in clause (i), (ii), (iv), (v), (viii), (ix), or |
| 3 | (x) of subparagraph (A) or in subparagraph |
| 4 | (C), in any such case acting as investment man- |
| 5 | ager or fiduciary (but excluding a person acting |
| 6 | as broker or performing an equivalent agency |
| 7 | function) for another person described in sub- |
| 8 | paragraph (A) or (C) and who is authorized by |
| 9 | such person to commit such person to the |
| 10 | transaction; or |
| 11 | "(C) any other person that the Commis- |
| 12 | sion determines to be eligible in light of the fi- |
| 13 | nancial or other qualifications of the person. |
| 14 | "(13) Excluded commodity.—The term 'ex- |
| 15 | cluded commodity' means— |
| 16 | "(i) an interest rate, exchange rate, |
| 17 | currency, security, security index, credit |
| 18 | risk or measure, debt or equity instrument, |
| 19 | index or measure of inflation, or other |
| 20 | macroeconomic index or measure; |
| 21 | "(ii) any other rate, differential, |
| 22 | index, or measure of economic or commer- |
| 23 | cial risk, return, or value that is— |
| 24 | "(I) not based in substantial part |
| 25 | on the value of a narrow group of |

| 1 | commodities not described in clause |
|----|---|
| 2 | (i); or |
| 3 | "(II) based solely on one or more |
| 4 | commodities that have no cash mar- |
| 5 | $\operatorname{ket};$ |
| 6 | "(iii) any economic or commercial |
| 7 | index based on prices, rates, values, or lev- |
| 8 | els that are not within the control of any |
| 9 | party to the relevant contract, agreement, |
| 10 | or transaction; or |
| 11 | "(iv) an occurrence, extent of an oc- |
| 12 | currence, or contingency (other than a |
| 13 | change in the price, rate, value, or level of |
| 14 | a commodity not described in clause (i)) |
| 15 | that is— |
| 16 | "(I) beyond the control of the |
| 17 | parties to the relevant contract, agree- |
| 18 | ment, or transaction; and |
| 19 | "(II) associated with a financial, |
| 20 | commercial, or economic consequence. |
| 21 | "(14) EXEMPT COMMODITY.—The term 'exempt |
| 22 | commodity' means a commodity that is not an ex- |
| 23 | cluded commodity or an agricultural commodity. |
| 24 | "(15) FINANCIAL INSTITUTION.—The term 'fi- |
| 25 | nancial institution' means— |

| 1 | "(A) a corporation operating under the |
|----|---|
| 2 | fifth undesignated paragraph of section 25 of |
| 3 | the Federal Reserve Act (12 U.S.C. 603), com- |
| 4 | monly known as 'an agreement corporation'; |
| 5 | "(B) a corporation organized under section |
| 6 | 25A of the Federal Reserve Act (12 U.S.C. 611 |
| 7 | et seq.), commonly known as an 'Edge Act cor- |
| 8 | poration'; |
| 9 | "(C) an institution that is regulated by the |
| 10 | Farm Credit Administration; |
| 11 | "(D) a Federal credit union or State credit |
| 12 | union (as defined in section 101 of the Federal |
| 13 | Credit Union Act (12 U.S.C. 1752)); |
| 14 | ((E) a depository institution (as defined in |
| 15 | section 3 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act |
| 16 | (12 U.S.C. 1813)); |
| 17 | "(F) a foreign bank or a branch or agency |
| 18 | of a foreign bank (each as defined in section |
| 19 | 1(b) of the International Banking Act of 1978 |
| 20 | (12 U.S.C. 3101(b))); |
| 21 | "(G) any financial holding company (as de- |
| 22 | fined in section 2 of the Bank Holding Com- |
| | |
| 23 | pany Act of 1956); |

| | 21 |
|----|---|
| 1 | "(I) a similarly regulated subsidiary or af- |
| 2 | filiate of an entity described in any of subpara- |
| 3 | graphs (A) through (H)."; |
| 4 | (5) by inserting after paragraph (20) (as redes- |
| 5 | ignated by paragraph (1)) the following: |
| 6 | "(21) Hybrid instrument.—The term 'hybrid |
| 7 | instrument' means a security having one or more |
| 8 | payments indexed to the value, level, or rate of, or |
| 9 | providing for the delivery of, one or more commod- |
| 10 | ities."; |
| 11 | (6) by striking paragraph (24) (as redesignated |
| 12 | by paragraph (1)) and inserting the following: |
| 13 | "(24) Member of a contract market; mem- |
| 14 | BER OF A DERIVATIVES TRANSACTION EXECUTION |
| 15 | FACILITY.—The term 'member' means, with respect |
| 16 | to a contract market or derivatives transaction exe- |
| 17 | cution facility, an individual, association, partner- |
| 18 | ship, corporation, or trust— |
| 19 | "(A) owning or holding membership in, or |
| 20 | admitted to membership representation on, the |
| 21 | contract market or derivatives transaction exe- |
| 22 | cution facility; or |
| 23 | "(B) having trading privileges on the con- |
| 24 | tract market or derivatives transaction execu- |
| 25 | tion facility. |
| | |

| 1 | "(25) NARROW-BASED SECURITY INDEX.— |
|----|---|
| 2 | "(A) The term 'narrow-based security |
| 3 | index' means an index— |
| 4 | "(i) that has 9 or fewer component se- |
| 5 | curities; |
| 6 | "(ii) in which a component security |
| 7 | comprises more than 30 percent of the |
| 8 | index's weighting; |
| 9 | "(iii) in which the five highest weight- |
| 10 | ed component securities in the aggregate |
| 11 | comprise more than 60 percent of the |
| 12 | index's weighting; or |
| 13 | "(iv) in which the lowest weighted |
| 14 | component securities comprising, in the ag- |
| 15 | gregate, 25 percent of the index's |
| 16 | weighting have an aggregate dollar value |
| 17 | of average daily trading volume of less |
| 18 | than \$50,000,000 (or in the case of an |
| 19 | index with 15 or more component securi- |
| 20 | ties, \$30,000,000), except that if there are |
| 21 | two or more securities with equal |
| 22 | weighting that could be included in the cal- |
| 23 | culation of the lowest weighted component |
| 24 | securities comprising, in the aggregate, 25 |
| 25 | percent of the index's weighting, such se- |

| 1 | curities shall be ranked from lowest to |
|----|---|
| 2 | highest dollar value of average daily trad- |
| 3 | ing volume and shall be included in the |
| 4 | calculation based on their ranking starting |
| 5 | with the lowest ranked security. |
| 6 | "(B) Notwithstanding subparagraph (A), |
| 7 | an index is not a narrow-based security index |
| 8 | if— |
| 9 | "(i)(I) it has at least 9 component se- |
| 10 | curities; |
| 11 | "(II) no component security comprises |
| 12 | more than 30 percent of the index's |
| 13 | weighting; and |
| 14 | "(III) each component security is— |
| 15 | "(aa) registered pursuant to sec- |
| 16 | tion 12 of the Securities Exchange |
| 17 | Act of 1934; |
| 18 | "(bb) one of 750 securities with |
| 19 | the largest market capitalization; and |
| 20 | "(cc) one of 675 securities with |
| 21 | the largest dollar value of average |
| 22 | daily trading volume; |
| 23 | "(ii) a board of trade was designated |
| 24 | as a contract market by the Commodity |
| 25 | Futures Trading Commission with respect |
| | |

| 1 | to a contract of sale for future delivery on |
|----|--|
| 2 | the index, before the date of the enactment |
| 3 | of the Commodity Futures Modernization |
| 4 | Act of 2000; |
| 5 | "(iii)(I) a contract of sale for future |
| 6 | delivery on the index traded on a des- |
| 7 | ignated contract market or registered de- |
| 8 | rivatives transaction execution facility for |
| 9 | at least 30 days as a contract of sale for |
| 10 | future delivery on an index that was not a |
| 11 | narrow-based security index; and |
| 12 | "(II) it has been a narrow-based secu- |
| 13 | rity index for no more than 45 business |
| 14 | days over 3 consecutive calendar months; |
| 15 | "(iv) a contract of sale for future de- |
| 16 | livery on the index is traded on or subject |
| 17 | to the rules of a foreign board of trade and |
| 18 | meets such requirements as are jointly es- |
| 19 | tablished by rule or regulation by the Com- |
| 20 | mission and the Securities and Exchange |
| 21 | Commission; |
| 22 | "(v) no more than 18 months have |
| 23 | passed since the date of the enactment of |
| 24 | the Commodity Futures Modernization Act |
| 25 | of 2000 and— |

| 1 | "(I) it is traded on or subject to |
|----|---|
| 2 | the rules of a foreign board of trade; |
| 3 | "(II) the offer and sale in the |
| 4 | United States of a contract of sale for |
| 5 | future delivery on the index was au- |
| 6 | thorized before the date of the enact- |
| 7 | ment of the Commodity Futures Mod- |
| 8 | ernization Act of 2000; and |
| 9 | "(III) the conditions of such au- |
| 10 | thorization continue to be met; or |
| 11 | "(vi) a contract of sale for future de- |
| 12 | livery on the index is traded on or subject |
| 13 | to the rules of a board of trade and meets |
| 14 | such requirements as are jointly estab- |
| 15 | lished by rule, regulation, or order by the |
| 16 | Commission and the Securities and Ex- |
| 17 | change Commission. |
| 18 | "(C) Within 1 year after the date of the |
| 19 | enactment of the Commodity Futures Mod- |
| 20 | ernization Act of 2000, the Commission and the |
| 21 | Securities and Exchange Commission jointly |
| 22 | shall adopt rules or regulations that set forth |
| 23 | the requirements under subparagraph (B)(iv). |
| 24 | "(D) An index that is a narrow-based se- |
| 25 | curity index solely because it was a narrow- |
| | |

| 1 | based security index for more than 45 business |
|----|--|
| 2 | days over 3 consecutive calendar months pursu- |
| 3 | ant to clause (iii) of subparagraph (B) shall not |
| 4 | be a narrow-based security index for the 3 fol- |
| 5 | lowing calendar months. |
| 6 | "(E) For purposes of subparagraphs (A) |
| 7 | and (B)— |
| 8 | "(i) the dollar value of average daily |
| 9 | trading volume and the market capitaliza- |
| 10 | tion shall be calculated as of the preceding |
| 11 | 6 full calendar months; and |
| 12 | "(ii) the Commission and the Securi- |
| 13 | ties and Exchange Commission shall, by |
| 14 | rule or regulation, jointly specify the meth- |
| 15 | od to be used to determine market capital- |
| 16 | ization and dollar value of average daily |
| 17 | trading volume. |
| 18 | "(26) Option.—The term 'option' means an |
| 19 | agreement, contract, or transaction that is of the |
| 20 | character of, or is commonly known to the trade as, |
| 21 | an 'option', 'privilege', 'indemnity', 'bid', 'offer', |
| 22 | 'put', 'call', 'advance guaranty', or 'decline guar- |
| 23 | anty'. |
| 24 | "(27) Organized exchange.—The term 'or- |
| 25 | ganized exchange' means a trading facility that— |

| 1 | "(A) permits trading— |
|----|--|
| 2 | "(i) by or on behalf of a person that |
| 3 | is not an eligible contract participant; or |
| 4 | "(ii) by persons other than on a prin- |
| 5 | cipal-to-principal basis; or |
| 6 | "(B) has adopted (directly or through an- |
| 7 | other nongovernmental entity) rules that— |
| 8 | "(i) govern the conduct of partici- |
| 9 | pants, other than rules that govern the |
| 10 | submission of orders or execution of trans- |
| 11 | actions on the trading facility; and |
| 12 | "(ii) include disciplinary sanctions |
| 13 | other than the exclusion of participants |
| 14 | from trading."; and |
| 15 | (7) by adding at the end the following: |
| 16 | "(29) Registered entity.—The term 'reg- |
| 17 | istered entity' means— |
| 18 | "(A) a board of trade designated as a con- |
| 19 | tract market under section 5; |
| 20 | "(B) a derivatives transaction execution fa- |
| 21 | cility registered under section 5a; |
| 22 | "(C) a derivatives clearing organization |
| 23 | registered under section 5b; and |
| 24 | "(D) a board of trade designated as a con- |
| 25 | tract market under section 5f. |

"(30) SECURITY.—The term 'security' means a
 security as defined in section 2(a)(1) of the Securi ties Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77b(a)(1)) or section
 3(a)(10) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15
 U.S.C. 78c(a)(10)).

6 "(31) SECURITY FUTURE.—The term 'security 7 future' means a contract of sale for future delivery 8 of a single security or of a narrow-based security 9 index, including any interest therein or based on the 10 value thereof, except an exempted security under 11 section 3(a)(12) of the Securities Exchange Act of 12 1934 as in effect on the date of the enactment of 13 the Futures Trading Act of 1982 (other than any 14 municipal security as defined in section 3(a)(29) of 15 the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 as in effect on 16 the date of the enactment of the Futures Trading 17 Act of 1982). The term 'security future' does not in-18 clude any agreement, contract, or transaction ex-19 cluded from this Act under section 2(c), 2(d), 2(f), 20 or 2(g) of this Act (as in effect on the date of the 21 enactment of the Commodity Futures Modernization 22 Act of 2000) or title IV of the Commodity Futures 23 Modernization Act of 2000.

24 "(32) SECURITY FUTURES PRODUCT.—The
25 term 'security futures product' means a security fu-

| 1 | ture or any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege on |
|----|--|
| 2 | any security future. |
| 3 | "(33) TRADING FACILITY.— |
| 4 | "(A) IN GENERAL.—The term 'trading fa- |
| 5 | cility' means a person or group of persons that |
| 6 | constitutes, maintains, or provides a physical or |
| 7 | electronic facility or system in which multiple |
| 8 | participants have the ability to execute or trade |
| 9 | agreements, contracts, or transactions by ac- |
| 10 | cepting bids and offers made by other partici- |
| 11 | pants that are open to multiple participants in |
| 12 | the facility or system. |
| 13 | "(B) EXCLUSIONS.—The term 'trading fa- |
| 14 | cility' does not include— |
| 15 | "(i) a person or group of persons sole- |
| 16 | ly because the person or group of persons |
| 17 | constitutes, maintains, or provides an elec- |
| 18 | tronic facility or system that enables par- |
| 19 | ticipants to negotiate the terms of and |
| 20 | enter into bilateral transactions as a result |
| 21 | of communications exchanged by the par- |
| 22 | ties and not from interaction of multiple |
| 23 | bids and multiple offers within a predeter- |
| 24 | mined, nondiscretionary automated trade |
| 25 | matching and execution algorithm; |

| 1 | "(ii) a government securities dealer or |
|----|--|
| 2 | government securities broker, to the extent |
| 3 | that the dealer or broker executes or |
| 4 | trades agreements, contracts, or trans- |
| 5 | actions in government securities, or assists |
| 6 | persons in communicating about, negoti- |
| 7 | ating, entering into, executing, or trading |
| 8 | an agreement, contract, or transaction in |
| 9 | government securities (as the terms 'gov- |
| 10 | ernment securities dealer', 'government se- |
| 11 | curities broker', and 'government securi- |
| 12 | ties' are defined in section 3(a) of the Se- |
| 13 | curities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. |
| 14 | 78c(a))); or |
| 15 | "(iii) facilities on which bids and of- |
| 16 | fers, and acceptances of bids and offers ef- |
| 17 | fected on the facility, are not binding. |
| 18 | Any person, group of persons, dealer, broker, or |
| 19 | facility described in clause (i) or (ii) is excluded |
| 20 | from the meaning of the term 'trading facility' |
| 21 | for the purposes of this Act without any prior |
| 22 | specific approval, certification, or other action |
| 23 | by the Commission. |
| 24 | "(C) Special Rule.—A person or group |
| 25 | of persons that would not otherwise constitute |
| | |

| 1 | a trading facility shall not be considered to be |
|----|---|
| 2 | a trading facility solely as a result of the sub- |
| 3 | mission to a derivatives clearing organization of |
| 4 | transactions executed on or through the person |
| 5 | or group of persons.". |
| 6 | SEC. 102. AGREEMENTS, CONTRACTS, AND TRANSACTIONS |
| 7 | IN FOREIGN CURRENCY, GOVERNMENT SECU- |
| 8 | RITIES, AND CERTAIN OTHER COMMODITIES. |
| 9 | Section 2 of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. |
| 10 | 2, 2a, 3, 4, 4a) is amended by adding at the end the fol- |
| 11 | lowing: |
| 12 | "(c) Agreements, Contracts, and Transactions |
| 13 | IN FOREIGN CURRENCY, GOVERNMENT SECURITIES, AND |
| 14 | Certain Other Commodities.— |
| 15 | "(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in para- |
| 16 | graph (2), nothing in this Act (other than section 5a |
| 17 | (to the extent provided in section $5a(g)$), 5b, 5d, or |
| 18 | 12(e)(2)(B)) governs or applies to an agreement, |
| 19 | contract, or transaction in— |
| 20 | "(A) foreign currency; |
| 21 | "(B) government securities; |
| 22 | "(C) security warrants; |
| 23 | "(D) security rights; |
| 24 | "(E) resales of installment loan contracts; |

 $``({\rm E})$ resales of installment loan contracts;

| 1 | "(F) repurchase transactions in an ex- |
|----|---|
| 2 | cluded commodity; or |
| 3 | "(G) mortgages or mortgage purchase |
| 4 | commitments. |
| 5 | "(2) Commission Jurisdiction.— |
| 6 | "(A) AGREEMENTS, CONTRACTS, AND |
| 7 | TRANSACTIONS TRADED ON AN ORGANIZED EX- |
| 8 | CHANGE.—This Act applies to, and the Com- |
| 9 | mission shall have jurisdiction over, an agree- |
| 10 | ment, contract, or transaction described in |
| 11 | paragraph (1) that is— |
| 12 | "(i) a contract of sale of a commodity |
| 13 | for future delivery (or an option on such a |
| 14 | contract), or an option on a commodity |
| 15 | (other than foreign currency or a security |
| 16 | or a group or index of securities), that is |
| 17 | executed or traded on an organized ex- |
| 18 | change; or |
| 19 | "(ii) an option on foreign currency ex- |
| 20 | ecuted or traded on an organized exchange |
| 21 | that is not a national securities exchange |
| 22 | registered pursuant to section 6(a) of the |
| 23 | Securities Exchange Act of 1934. |
| 24 | "(B) AGREEMENTS, CONTRACTS, AND |
| 25 | TRANSACTIONS IN RETAIL FOREIGN CUR- |

| | 90 |
|----|--|
| 1 | RENCY.—This Act applies to, and the Commis- |
| 2 | sion shall have jurisdiction over, an agreement, |
| 3 | contract, or transaction in foreign currency |
| 4 | that— |
| 5 | "(i) is a contract of sale of a com- |
| 6 | modity for future delivery (or an option on |
| 7 | such a contract) or an option (other than |
| 8 | an option executed or traded on a national |
| 9 | securities exchange registered pursuant to |
| 10 | section 6(a) of the Securities Exchange Act |
| 11 | of 1934); and |
| 12 | "(ii) is offered to, or entered into |
| 13 | with, a person that is not an eligible con- |
| 14 | tract participant, unless the counterparty, |
| 15 | or the person offering to be the |
| 16 | counterparty, of the person is— |
| 17 | "(I) a financial institution; |
| 18 | "(II) a broker or dealer reg- |
| 19 | istered under section $15(b)$ or $15C$ of |
| 20 | the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 |
| 21 | (15 U.S.C. 780(b), 780–5) or a fu- |
| 22 | tures commission merchant registered |
| 23 | under this Act; |
| 24 | "(III) an associated person of a |
| 25 | broker or dealer registered under sec- |
| | |

| 1 | tion 15(b) or 15C of the Securities |
|----|---|
| 2 | Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. |
| 3 | 780(b), 780–5), or an affiliated person |
| 4 | of a futures commission merchant |
| 5 | registered under this Act, concerning |
| 6 | the financial or securities activities of |
| 7 | which the registered person makes |
| 8 | and keeps records under section |
| 9 | 15C(b) or 17(h) of the Securities Ex- |
| 10 | change Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 780– |
| 11 | 5(b), $78q(h)$) or section $4f(c)(2)(B)$ of |
| 12 | this Act; |
| 13 | "(IV) an insurance company de- |
| 14 | scribed in section 1a(12)(A)(ii) of this |
| 15 | Act, or a regulated subsidiary or affil- |
| 16 | iate of such an insurance company; |
| 17 | "(V) a financial holding company |
| 18 | (as defined in section 2 of the Bank |
| 19 | Holding Company Act of 1956); or |
| 20 | "(VI) an investment bank hold- |
| 21 | ing company (as defined in section |
| 22 | 17(i) of the Securities Exchange Act |
| 23 | of 1934). |
| 24 | ((C) Notwithstanding subclauses (II) and |
| 25 | (III) of subparagraph (B)(ii), agreements, con- |

| 1 | tracts, or transactions described in subpara- |
|--|---|
| 2 | graph (B) shall be subject to sections 4b, 4c(b), |
| | |
| 3 | 6(c) and $6(d)$ (to the extent that sections $6(c)$ |
| 4 | and 6(d) prohibit manipulation of the market |
| 5 | price of any commodity, in interstate commerce, |
| 6 | or for future delivery on or subject to the rules |
| 7 | of any market), 6c, 6d, and 8(a) if they are en- |
| 8 | tered into by a futures commission merchant or |
| 9 | an affiliate of a futures commission merchant |
| 10 | that is not also an entity described in subpara- |
| 11 | graph (B)(ii) of this paragraph.". |
| 12 | SEC. 103. LEGAL CERTAINTY FOR EXCLUDED DERIVATIVE |
| | |
| 13 | TRANSACTIONS. |
| 13 14 | TRANSACTIONS. Section 2 of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. |
| | |
| 14 | Section 2 of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. |
| 14 15 | Section 2 of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 2, 2a, 3, 4, 4a) is further amended by adding at the end |
| 14 15 16 | Section 2 of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 2, 2a, 3, 4, 4a) is further amended by adding at the end the following: |
| 14 15 16 17 | Section 2 of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 2, 2a, 3, 4, 4a) is further amended by adding at the end the following: "(d) EXCLUDED DERIVATIVE TRANSACTIONS.— |
| 14 15 16 17 18 | Section 2 of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 2, 2a, 3, 4, 4a) is further amended by adding at the end the following: "(d) EXCLUDED DERIVATIVE TRANSACTIONS.— "(1) IN GENERAL.—Nothing in this Act (other |
| 14 15 16 17 18 19 | Section 2 of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 2, 2a, 3, 4, 4a) is further amended by adding at the end the following: "(d) EXCLUDED DERIVATIVE TRANSACTIONS.— "(1) IN GENERAL.—Nothing in this Act (other than section 5b or 12(e)(2)(B) governs or applies to |
| 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 | Section 2 of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 2, 2a, 3, 4, 4a) is further amended by adding at the end the following: "(d) EXCLUDED DERIVATIVE TRANSACTIONS.— "(1) IN GENERAL.—Nothing in this Act (other than section 5b or 12(e)(2)(B) governs or applies to an agreement, contract, or transaction in an ex- |
| 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 | Section 2 of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 2, 2a, 3, 4, 4a) is further amended by adding at the end the following: "(d) EXCLUDED DERIVATIVE TRANSACTIONS.— "(1) IN GENERAL.—Nothing in this Act (other than section 5b or 12(e)(2)(B) governs or applies to an agreement, contract, or transaction in an ex- cluded commodity if— |

| 1 | which the persons enter into the agreement, |
|----|---|
| 2 | contract, or transaction; and |
| 3 | "(B) the agreement, contract, or trans- |
| 4 | action is not executed or traded on a trading fa- |
| 5 | cility. |
| 6 | "(2) ELECTRONIC TRADING FACILITY EXCLU- |
| 7 | SION.—Nothing in this Act (other than section 5a |
| 8 | (to the extent provided in section 5a(g)), 5b, 5d, or |
| 9 | 12(e)(2)(B)) governs or applies to an agreement, |
| 10 | contract, or transaction in an excluded commodity |
| 11 | if— |
| 12 | "(A) the agreement, contract, or trans- |
| 13 | action is entered into on a principal-to-principal |
| 14 | basis between parties trading for their own ac- |
| 15 | counts or as described in section $1a(12)(B)(ii)$; |
| 16 | "(B) the agreement, contract, or trans- |
| 17 | action is entered into only between persons that |
| 18 | are eligible contract participants described in |
| 19 | subparagraph (A), (B)(ii), or (C) of section |
| 20 | 1a(12)) at the time at which the persons enter |
| 21 | into the agreement, contract, or transaction; |
| 22 | and |
| 23 | "(C) the agreement, contract, or trans- |
| 24 | action is executed or traded on an electronic |
| 25 | trading facility.". |
| | |

2 Section 2 of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C.
3 2, 2a, 3, 4, 4a) is further amended by adding at the end
4 the following:

5 "(e) EXCLUDED ELECTRONIC TRADING FACILI-6 TIES.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Nothing in this Act (other
than section 12(e)(2)(B)) governs or is applicable to
an electronic trading facility that limits transactions
authorized to be conducted on its facilities to those
satisfying the requirements of section 2(d)(2), 2(g),
or 2(h)(3).

13 "(2) EFFECT ON AUTHORITY TO ESTABLISH 14 AND OPERATE.—Nothing in this Act shall prohibit a 15 board of trade designated by the Commission as a 16 contract market or derivatives transaction execution 17 facility, or operating as an exempt board of trade 18 from establishing and operating an electronic trad-19 ing facility excluded under this Act pursuant to 20 paragraph (1).

21 "(3) EFFECT ON TRANSACTIONS.—No failure
22 by an electronic trading facility to limit transactions
23 as required by paragraph (1) of this subsection or
24 to comply with section 2(h)(5) shall in itself affect
25 the legality, validity, or enforceability of an agree26 ment, contract, or transaction entered into or traded

SEC. 104. EXCLUDED ELECTRONIC TRADING FACILITIES.

| on the electronic trading facility or cause a partici- |
|---|
| pant on the system to be in violation of this Act. |
| "(4) Special Rule.—A person or group of |
| persons that would not otherwise constitute a trad- |
| ing facility shall not be considered to be a trading |
| facility solely as a result of the submission to a de- |
| rivatives clearing organization of transactions exe- |
| cuted on or through the person or group of per- |
| sons.". |
| SEC. 105. HYBRID INSTRUMENTS; SWAP TRANSACTIONS. |
| (a) Hybrid Instruments.—Section 2 of the Com- |
| modity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 2, 2a, 3, 4, 4a) is further |
| amended by adding at the end the following: |
| "(f) Exclusion for Qualifying Hybrid Instru- |
| MENTS.— |
| "(1) IN GENERAL.—Nothing in this Act (other |
| than section $12(e)(2)(B)$) governs or is applicable to |
| a hybrid instrument that is predominantly a secu- |
| rity. |
| "(2) Predominance.—A hybrid instrument |
| shall be considered to be predominantly a security |
| if— |
| "(A) the issuer of the hybrid instrument |
| receives payment in full of the purchase price of |
| the hybrid instrument, substantially contem- |
| |

poraneously with delivery of the hybrid instrument;

"(B) the purchaser or holder of the hybrid instrument is not required to make any payment to the issuer in addition to the purchase price paid under subparagraph (A), whether as margin, settlement payment, or otherwise, during the life of the hybrid instrument or at maturity;

10 "(C) the issuer of the hybrid instrument is
11 not subject by the terms of the instrument to
12 mark-to-market margining requirements; and

"(D) the hybrid instrument is not marketed as a contract of sale of a commodity for
future delivery (or option on such a contract)
subject to this Act.

17 "(3) MARK-TO-MARKET MARGINING REQUIRE-18 MENTS.—For the purposes of paragraph (2)(C), 19 mark-to-market margining requirements do not in-20 clude the obligation of an issuer of a secured debt 21 instrument to increase the amount of collateral held 22 in pledge for the benefit of the purchaser of the se-23 cured debt instrument to secure the repayment obli-24 gations of the issuer under the secured debt instru-25 ment.".

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

(b) SWAP TRANSACTIONS.—Section 2 of the Com modity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 2, 2a, 3, 4, 4a) is further
 amended by adding at the end the following:

4 "(g) EXCLUDED SWAP TRANSACTIONS.—No provi5 sion of this Act (other than section 5a (to the extent pro6 vided in section 5a(g)), 5b, 5d, or 12(e)(2)) shall apply
7 to or govern any agreement, contract, or transaction in
8 a commodity other than an agricultural commodity if the
9 agreement, contract, or transaction is—

"(1) entered into only between persons that are
eligible contract participants at the time they enter
into the agreement, contract, or transaction;

13 "(2) subject to individual negotiation by the14 parties; and

15 "(3) not executed or traded on a trading facil-16 ity.".

17 (c) Study Regarding Retail Swaps.—

18 (1) IN GENERAL.—The Board of Governors of 19 the Federal Reserve System, the Secretary of the 20 Treasury, the Commodity Futures Trading Commis-21 sion, and the Securities and Exchange Commission 22 shall conduct a study of issues involving the offering 23 of swap agreements to persons other than eligible 24 contract participants (as defined in section 1a of the 25 Commodity Exchange Act).

| 1 | (2) MATTERS TO BE ADDRESSED.—The study |
|----|--|
| 2 | shall address— |
| 3 | (A) the potential uses of swap agreements |
| 4 | by persons other than eligible contract partici- |
| 5 | pants; |
| 6 | (B) the extent to which financial institu- |
| 7 | tions are willing to offer swap agreements to |
| 8 | persons other than eligible contract partici- |
| 9 | pants; |
| 10 | (C) the appropriate regulatory structure to |
| 11 | address customer protection issues that may |
| 12 | arise in connection with the offer of swap agree- |
| 13 | ments to persons other than eligible contract |
| 14 | participants; and |
| 15 | (D) such other relevant matters deemed |
| 16 | necessary or appropriate to address. |
| 17 | (3) REPORT.—Before the end of the 1-year pe- |
| 18 | riod beginning on the date of the enactment of this |
| 19 | Act, a report on the findings and conclusions of the |
| 20 | study required by paragraph (1) shall be submitted |
| 21 | to Congress, together with such recommendations |
| 22 | for legislative action as are deemed necessary and |
| 23 | appropriate. |

| 1 | SEC. 106. TRANSACTIONS IN EXEMPT COMMODITIES. |
|----|--|
| 2 | Section 2 of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. |
| 3 | 2, 2a, 3, 4, 4a) is further amended by adding at the end |
| 4 | the following: |
| 5 | "(h) Legal Certainty for Certain Trans- |
| 6 | actions in Exempt Commodities.— |
| 7 | ((1) Except as provided in paragraph (2) , noth- |
| 8 | ing in this Act shall apply to a contract, agreement, |
| 9 | or transaction in an exempt commodity which— |
| 10 | "(A) is entered into solely between persons |
| 11 | that are eligible contract participants at the |
| 12 | time the persons enter into the agreement, con- |
| 13 | tract, or transaction; and |
| 14 | "(B) is not entered into on a trading facil- |
| 15 | ity. |
| 16 | ((2) An agreement, contract, or transaction de- |
| 17 | scribed in paragraph (1) of this subsection shall be |
| 18 | subject to— |
| 19 | "(A) sections 5b and $12(e)(2)(B)$; |
| 20 | "(B) sections 4b, 4o, 6(c), 6(d), 6c, 6d, |
| 21 | and 8a, and the regulations of the Commission |
| 22 | pursuant to section $4c(b)$ proscribing fraud in |
| 23 | connection with commodity option transactions, |
| 24 | to the extent the agreement, contract, or trans- |
| 25 | action is not between eligible commercial enti- |
| 26 | ties (unless one of the entities is an instrumen- |

| 10 |
|--|
| tality, department, or agency of a State or local |
| governmental entity) and would otherwise be |
| subject to such sections and regulations; and |
| "(C) sections $6(c)$, $6(d)$, $6c$, $6d$, $8a$, and |
| 9(a)(2), to the extent such sections prohibit ma- |
| nipulation of the market price of any com- |
| modity in interstate commerce and the agree- |
| ment, contract, or transaction would otherwise |
| be subject to such sections. |
| ((3) Except as provided in paragraph (4) , noth- |
| ing in this Act shall apply to an agreement, contract, |
| or transaction in an exempt commodity which is— |
| "(A) entered into on a principal-to-prin- |
| cipal basis solely between persons that are eligi- |
| ble commercial entities at the time the persons |
| enter into the agreement, contract, or trans- |
| action; and |
| "(B) executed or traded on an electronic |
| trading facility. |
| "(4) An agreement, contract, or transaction de- |
| scribed in paragraph (3) of this subsection shall be |
| subject to— |
| "(A) sections 5a (to the extent provided in |
| section $5a(g)$, 5b, 5d, and $12(e)(2)(B)$; |
| |

| 1 | "(B) sections 4b and 4o and the regula- |
|----|---|
| 2 | tions of the Commission pursuant to section |
| 3 | 4c(b) proscribing fraud in connection with com- |
| 4 | modity option transactions to the extent the |
| 5 | agreement, contract, or transaction would oth- |
| 6 | erwise be subject to such sections and regula- |
| 7 | tions; |
| 8 | "(C) sections $6(c)$ and $9(a)(2)$, to the ex- |
| 9 | tent such sections prohibit manipulation of the |
| 10 | market price of any commodity in interstate |
| 11 | commerce and to the extent the agreement, con- |
| 12 | tract, or transaction would otherwise be subject |
| 13 | to such sections; and |
| 14 | "(D) such rules and regulations as the |
| 15 | Commission may prescribe if necessary to en- |
| 16 | sure timely dissemination by the electronic trad- |
| 17 | ing facility of price, trading volume, and other |
| 18 | trading data to the extent appropriate, if the |
| 19 | Commission determines that the electronic trad- |
| 20 | ing facility performs a significant price dis- |
| 21 | covery function for transactions in the cash |
| 22 | market for the commodity underlying any |
| 23 | agreement, contract, or transaction executed or |
| 24 | traded on the electronic trading facility. |

| | - |
|----|--|
| 1 | "(5) An electronic trading facility relying on the |
| 2 | exemption provided in paragraph (3) shall— |
| 3 | "(A) notify the Commission of its intention |
| 4 | to operate an electronic trading facility in reli- |
| 5 | ance on the exemption set forth in paragraph |
| 6 | (3), which notice shall include— |
| 7 | "(i) the name and address of the facil- |
| 8 | ity and a person designated to receive com- |
| 9 | munications from the Commission; |
| 10 | "(ii) the commodity categories that |
| 11 | the facility intends to list or otherwise |
| 12 | make available for trading on the facility |
| 13 | in reliance on the exemption set forth in |
| 14 | paragraph (3); |
| 15 | "(iii) certifications that— |
| 16 | "(I) no executive officer or mem- |
| 17 | ber of the governing board of, or any |
| 18 | holder of a 10 percent or greater eq- |
| 19 | uity interest in, the facility is a person |
| 20 | described in any of subparagraphs (A) |
| 21 | through (H) of section 8a(2); |
| 22 | "(II) the facility will comply with |
| 23 | the conditions for exemption under |
| 24 | this paragraph; and |

| 1 | "(III) the facility will notify the |
|----|--|
| 2 | Commission of any material change in |
| 3 | the information previously provided by |
| 4 | the facility to the Commission pursu- |
| 5 | ant to this paragraph; and |
| 6 | "(iv) the identity of any derivatives |
| 7 | clearing organization to which the facility |
| 8 | transmits or intends to transmit trans- |
| 9 | action data for the purpose of facilitating |
| 10 | the clearance and settlement of trans- |
| 11 | actions conducted on the facility in reliance |
| 12 | on the exemption set forth in paragraph |
| 13 | (3); |
| 14 | "(B)(i)(I) provide the Commission with ac- |
| 15 | cess to the facility's trading protocols and elec- |
| 16 | tronic access to the facility with respect to |
| 17 | transactions conducted in reliance on the ex- |
| 18 | emption set forth in paragraph (3); or |
| 19 | "(II) provide such reports to the Commis- |
| 20 | sion regarding transactions executed on the fa- |
| 21 | cility in reliance on the exemption set forth in |
| 22 | paragraph (3) as the Commission may from |
| 23 | time to time request to enable the Commission |
| 24 | to satisfy its obligations under this Act; |
| | |

"(ii) maintain for 5 years, and make avail-1 2 able for inspection by the Commission upon re-3 quest, records of activities related to its busi-4 ness as an electronic trading facility exempt under paragraph (3), including— 5 6 "(I) information relating to data entry 7 and transaction details sufficient to enable 8 the Commission to reconstruct trading ac-9 tivity on the facility conducted in reliance 10 on the exemption set forth in paragraph 11 (3); and 12 "(II) the name and address of each 13 participant on the facility authorized to 14 enter into transactions in reliance on the 15 exemption set forth in paragraph (3); and "(iii) upon special call by the Commission, 16 17 provide to the Commission, in a form and man-18 ner and within the period specified in the spe-19 cial call, such information related to its busi-20 ness as an electronic trading facility exempt 21 under paragraph (3), including information re-22 lating to data entry and transaction details in 23 respect of transactions entered into in reliance 24 on the exemption set forth in paragraph (3), as 25 the Commission may determine appropriate—

"(I) to enforce the provisions specified 1 2 in subparagraphs (B) and (C) of para-3 graph (4); "(II) to evaluate a systemic market 4 5 event; or 6 "(III) to obtain information requested 7 by a Federal financial regulatory authority 8 in order to enable the regulator to fulfill 9 its regulatory or supervisory responsibil-10 ities; 11 "(C)(i) upon receipt of any subpoena 12 issued by or on behalf of the Commission to any 13 foreign person who the Commission believes is 14 conducting or has conducted transactions in re-15 liance on the exemption set forth in paragraph 16 (3) on or through the electronic trading facility 17 relating to the transactions, promptly notify the 18 foreign person of, and transmit to the foreign 19 person, the subpoena in a manner reasonable 20 under the circumstances, or as specified by the 21 Commission; and 22 "(ii) if the Commission has reason to be-23

(ii) if the Commission has reason to believe that a person has not timely complied with
a subpoena issued by or on behalf of the Commission pursuant to clause (i), and the Commis-

•HR 5660 IH

| 1 | sion in writing has directed that a facility rely- |
|----|--|
| 2 | ing on the exemption set forth in paragraph (3) |
| 3 | deny or limit further transactions by the per- |
| 4 | son, the facility shall deny that person further |
| 5 | trading access to the facility or, as applicable, |
| 6 | limit that person's access to the facility for liq- |
| 7 | uidation trading only; |
| 8 | "(D) comply with the requirements of this |
| 9 | paragraph applicable to the facility and require |
| 10 | that each participant, as a condition of trading |
| 11 | on the facility in reliance on the exemption set |
| 12 | forth in paragraph (3), agree to comply with all |
| 13 | applicable law; |
| 14 | "(E) have a reasonable basis for believing |
| 15 | that participants authorized to conduct trans- |
| 16 | actions on the facility in reliance on the exemp- |
| 17 | tion set forth in paragraph (3) are eligible com- |
| 18 | mercial entities; and |
| 19 | ((F) not represent to any person that the |
| 20 | facility is registered with, or designated, recog- |
| 21 | nized, licensed, or approved by the Commission. |
| 22 | "(6) A person named in a subpoena referred to |
| 23 | in paragraph $(5)(C)$ that believes the person is or |
| 24 | may be adversely affected or aggrieved by action |
| 25 | taken by the Commission under this section, shall |

| 1 | have the opportunity for a prompt hearing after the |
|----|--|
| 2 | Commission acts under procedures that the Commis- |
| 3 | sion shall establish by rule, regulation, or order.". |
| 4 | SEC. 107. APPLICATION OF COMMODITY FUTURES LAWS. |
| 5 | Section 2 of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. |
| 6 | 2, 2a, 3, 4, 4a) is further amended by adding at the end |
| 7 | the following: |
| 8 | "(i) Application of Commodity Futures |
| 9 | LAWS.— |
| 10 | "(1) No provision of this Act shall be construed |
| 11 | as implying or creating any presumption that— |
| 12 | "(A) any agreement, contract, or trans- |
| 13 | action that is excluded from this Act under sec- |
| 14 | tion $2(c)$, $2(d)$, $2(e)$, $2(f)$, or $2(g)$ of this Act |
| 15 | or title IV of the Commodity Futures Mod- |
| 16 | ernization Act of 2000, or exempted under sec- |
| 17 | tion 2(h) or 4(c) of this Act; or |
| 18 | "(B) any agreement, contract, or trans- |
| 19 | action, not otherwise subject to this Act, that is |
| 20 | not so excluded or exempted, |
| 21 | is or would otherwise be subject to this Act. |
| 22 | "(2) No provision of, or amendment made by, |
| 23 | the Commodity Futures Modernization Act of 2000 |
| 24 | shall be construed as conferring jurisdiction on the |
| 25 | Commission with respect to any such agreement, |

contract, or transaction, except as expressly provided
 in section 5a of this Act (to the extent provided in
 section 5a(g) of this Act), 5b of this Act, or 5d of
 this Act.".

5 SEC. 108. PROTECTION OF THE PUBLIC INTEREST.

6 The Commodity Exchange Act is amended by striking7 section 3 (7 U.S.C. 5) and inserting the following:

8 "SEC. 3. FINDINGS AND PURPOSE.

9 "(a) FINDINGS.—The transactions subject to this Act 10 are entered into regularly in interstate and international 11 commerce and are affected with a national public interest 12 by providing a means for managing and assuming price 13 risks, discovering prices, or disseminating pricing informa-14 tion through trading in liquid, fair and financially secure 15 trading facilities.

"(b) PURPOSE.—It is the purpose of this Act to serve 16 the public interests described in subsection (a) through a 17 system of effective self-regulation of trading facilities, 18 19 clearing systems, market participants and market profes-20sionals under the oversight of the Commission. To foster 21 these public interests, it is further the purpose of this Act 22 to deter and prevent price manipulation or any other dis-23 ruptions to market integrity; to ensure the financial integ-24 rity of all transactions subject to this Act and the avoid-25 ance of systemic risk; to protect all market participants from fraudulent or other abusive sales practices and mis uses of customer assets; and to promote responsible inno vation and fair competition among boards of trade, other
 markets and market participants.".

5 SEC. 109. PROHIBITED TRANSACTIONS.

6 Section 4c of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C.
7 6c) is amended by striking "SEC. 4c." and all that follows
8 through subsection (a) and inserting the following:

9 "SEC. 4c. PROHIBITED TRANSACTIONS.

10 "(a) IN GENERAL.—

11 "(1) PROHIBITION.—It shall be unlawful for 12 any person to offer to enter into, enter into, or con-13 firm the execution of a transaction described in 14 paragraph (2) involving the purchase or sale of any 15 commodity for future delivery (or any option on such 16 a transaction or option on a commodity) if the 17 transaction is used or may be used to—

18 "(A) hedge any transaction in interstate
19 commerce in the commodity or the product or
20 byproduct of the commodity;

21 "(B) determine the price basis of any such
22 transaction in interstate commerce in the commodity; or

| 1 | "(C) deliver any such commodity sold, |
|--|--|
| 2 | shipped, or received in interstate commerce for |
| 3 | the execution of the transaction. |
| 4 | "(2) TRANSACTION.—A transaction referred to |
| 5 | in paragraph (1) is a transaction that— |
| 6 | "(A)(i) is, of the character of, or is com- |
| 7 | monly known to the trade as, a 'wash sale' or |
| 8 | 'accommodation trade'; or |
| 9 | "(ii) is a fictitious sale; or |
| 10 | "(B) is used to cause any price to be re- |
| 11 | ported, registered, or recorded that is not a |
| 12 | true and bona fide price.". |
| | |
| 13 | SEC. 110. DESIGNATION OF BOARDS OF TRADE AS CON- |
| 13 14 | SEC. 110. DESIGNATION OF BOARDS OF TRADE AS CON- TRACT MARKETS. |
| | |
| 14 | TRACT MARKETS. |
| 14 15 | TRACT MARKETS. The Commodity Exchange Act is amended— |
| 14 15 16 | TRACT MARKETS. The Commodity Exchange Act is amended— (1) by redesignating section 5b (7 U.S.C. 7b) |
| 14 15 16 17 | TRACT MARKETS. The Commodity Exchange Act is amended— (1) by redesignating section 5b (7 U.S.C. 7b) as section 5e; and |
| 14 15 16 17 18 | TRACT MARKETS. The Commodity Exchange Act is amended— (1) by redesignating section 5b (7 U.S.C. 7b) as section 5e; and (2) by striking sections 5 and 5a (7 U.S.C. 7, |
| 14 15 16 17 18 19 | TRACT MARKETS. The Commodity Exchange Act is amended— (1) by redesignating section 5b (7 U.S.C. 7b) as section 5e; and (2) by striking sections 5 and 5a (7 U.S.C. 7, 7a) and inserting the following: |
| 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 | TRACT MARKETS. The Commodity Exchange Act is amended— (1) by redesignating section 5b (7 U.S.C. 7b) as section 5e; and (2) by striking sections 5 and 5a (7 U.S.C. 7, 7a) and inserting the following: "SEC. 5. DESIGNATION OF BOARDS OF TRADE AS CON- |
| 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 | TRACT MARKETS. The Commodity Exchange Act is amended— (1) by redesignating section 5b (7 U.S.C. 7b) as section 5e; and (2) by striking sections 5 and 5a (7 U.S.C. 7, 7a) and inserting the following: "SEC. 5. DESIGNATION OF BOARDS OF TRADE AS CON- TRACT MARKETS. |

relevant materials and records the Commission may re quire consistent with this Act.

3 "(b) Criteria for Designation.—

4 "(1) IN GENERAL.—To be designated as a con5 tract market, the board of trade shall demonstrate
6 to the Commission that the board of trade meets the
7 criteria specified in this subsection.

8 (2)PREVENTION OF MARKET MANIPULA-9 TION.—The board of trade shall have the capacity to 10 prevent market manipulation through market sur-11 veillance, compliance, and enforcement practices and 12 procedures, including methods for conducting real-13 time monitoring of trading and comprehensive and 14 accurate trade reconstructions.

15 "(3) FAIR AND EQUITABLE TRADING.—The
16 board of trade shall establish and enforce trading
17 rules to ensure fair and equitable trading through
18 the facilities of the contract market, and the capac19 ity to detect, investigate, and discipline any person
20 that violates the rules. The rules may authorize—

21 "(A) transfer trades or office trades;
22 "(B) an exchange of—
23 "(i) futures in connection with a cash
24 commodity transaction;

"(ii) futures for cash commodities; or

| "(iii) futures for swaps; or |
|--|
| "(C) a futures commission merchant, act- |
| ing as principal or agent, to enter into or con- |
| firm the execution of a contract for the pur- |
| chase or sale of a commodity for future delivery |
| if the contract is reported, recorded, or cleared |
| in accordance with the rules of the contract |
| market or a derivatives clearing organization. |
| "(4) TRADE EXECUTION FACILITY.—The board |
| of trade shall— |
| "(A) establish and enforce rules defining, |
| or specifications detailing, the manner of oper- |
| ation of the trade execution facility maintained |
| by the board of trade, including rules or speci- |
| fications describing the operation of any elec- |
| tronic matching platform; and |
| "(B) demonstrate that the trade execution |
| facility operates in accordance with the rules or |
| specifications. |
| "(5) FINANCIAL INTEGRITY OF TRANS- |
| ACTIONS.—The board of trade shall establish and |
| enforce rules and procedures for ensuring the finan- |
| cial integrity of transactions entered into by or |
| through the facilities of the contract market, includ- |
| |

ing the clearance and settlement of the transactions
 with a derivatives clearing organization.

"(6) DISCIPLINARY PROCEDURES.—The board 3 4 of trade shall establish and enforce disciplinary procedures that authorize the board of trade to dis-5 6 cipline, suspend, or expel members or market par-7 ticipants that violate the rules of the board of trade. 8 or similar methods for performing the same func-9 tions, including delegation of the functions to third 10 parties.

"(7) PUBLIC ACCESS.—The board of trade shall
provide the public with access to the rules, regulations, and contract specifications of the board of
trade.

15 "(8) ABILITY TO OBTAIN INFORMATION.—The 16 board of trade shall establish and enforce rules that 17 will allow the board of trade to obtain any necessary 18 information to perform any of the functions de-19 scribed in this subsection, including the capacity to 20 carry out such international information-sharing 21 agreements as the Commission may require.

"(c) EXISTING CONTRACT MARKETS.—A board of
trade that is designated as a contract market on the date
of the enactment of the Commodity Futures Moderniza-

1 tion Act of 2000 shall be considered to be a designated2 contract market under this section.

"(d) CORE PRINCIPLES FOR CONTRACT MARKETS.—
"(1) IN GENERAL.—To maintain the designation of a board of trade as a contract market, the
board of trade shall comply with the core principles
specified in this subsection. The board of trade shall
have reasonable discretion in establishing the manner in which it complies with the core principles.

10 "(2) COMPLIANCE WITH RULES.—The board of 11 trade shall monitor and enforce compliance with the 12 rules of the contract market, including the terms 13 and conditions of any contracts to be traded and any 14 limitations on access to the contract market.

15 "(3) CONTRACTS NOT READILY SUBJECT TO
16 MANIPULATION.—The board of trade shall list on
17 the contract market only contracts that are not
18 readily susceptible to manipulation.

"(4) MONITORING OF TRADING.—The board of
trade shall monitor trading to prevent manipulation,
price distortion, and disruptions of the delivery or
cash-settlement process.

23 "(5) POSITION LIMITATIONS OR ACCOUNT24 ABILITY.—To reduce the potential threat of market
25 manipulation or congestion, especially during trading

| 1 | in the delivery month, the board of trade shall adopt |
|----|--|
| 2 | position limitations or position accountability for |
| 3 | speculators, where necessary and appropriate. |
| 4 | "(6) Emergency Authority.—The board of |
| 5 | trade shall adopt rules to provide for the exercise of |
| 6 | emergency authority, in consultation or cooperation |
| 7 | with the Commission, where necessary and appro- |
| 8 | priate, including the authority to— |
| 9 | "(A) liquidate or transfer open positions in |
| 10 | any contract; |
| 11 | "(B) suspend or curtail trading in any con- |
| 12 | tract; and |
| 13 | "(C) require market participants in any |
| 14 | contract to meet special margin requirements. |
| 15 | "(7) AVAILABILITY OF GENERAL INFORMA- |
| 16 | TION.—The board of trade shall make available to |
| 17 | market authorities, market participants, and the |
| 18 | public information concerning— |
| 19 | "(A) the terms and conditions of the con- |
| 20 | tracts of the contract market; and |
| 21 | "(B) the mechanisms for executing trans- |
| 22 | actions on or through the facilities of the con- |
| 23 | tract market. |
| 24 | "(8) Daily publication of trading infor- |
| 25 | MATION.—The board of trade shall make public |

daily information on settlement prices, volume, open
 interest, and opening and closing ranges for actively
 traded contracts on the contract market.

4 "(9) EXECUTION OF TRANSACTIONS.—The
5 board of trade shall provide a competitive, open, and
6 efficient market and mechanism for executing trans7 actions.

8 "(10) TRADE INFORMATION.—The board of 9 trade shall maintain rules and procedures to provide 10 for the recording and safe storage of all identifying 11 trade information in a manner that enables the con-12 tract market to use the information for purposes of 13 assisting in the prevention of customer and market 14 abuses and providing evidence of any violations of 15 the rules of the contract market.

"(11) FINANCIAL INTEGRITY OF CONTRACTS.— 16 17 The board of trade shall establish and enforce rules 18 providing for the financial integrity of any contracts 19 traded on the contract market (including the clear-20 ance and settlement of the transactions with a de-21 rivatives clearing organization), and rules to ensure 22 the financial integrity of any futures commission 23 merchants and introducing brokers and the protection of customer funds. 24

| 1 | "(12) PROTECTION OF MARKET PARTICI- |
|----|--|
| 2 | PANTS.—The board of trade shall establish and en- |
| 3 | force rules to protect market participants from abu- |
| 4 | sive practices committed by any party acting as an |
| 5 | agent for the participants. |
| 6 | "(13) DISPUTE RESOLUTION.—The board of |
| 7 | trade shall establish and enforce rules regarding and |
| 8 | provide facilities for alternative dispute resolution as |
| 9 | appropriate for market participants and any market |
| 10 | intermediaries. |
| 11 | "(14) GOVERNANCE FITNESS STANDARDS.— |
| 12 | The board of trade shall establish and enforce ap- |
| 13 | propriate fitness standards for directors, members of |
| 14 | any disciplinary committee, members of the contract |
| 15 | market, and any other persons with direct access to |
| 16 | the facility (including any parties affiliated with any |
| 17 | of the persons described in this paragraph). |
| 18 | "(15) Conflicts of interest.—The board of |
| 19 | trade shall establish and enforce rules to minimize |
| 20 | conflicts of interest in the decision making process of |
| 21 | the contract market and establish a process for re- |
| 22 | solving such conflicts of interest. |
| 23 | "(16) Composition of boards of mutually |
| 24 | OWNED CONTRACT MARKETS.—In the case of a mu- |
| 25 | tually owned contract market, the board of trade |
| | |

| 1 | shall ensure that the composition of the governing |
|----|---|
| 2 | board reflects market participants. |
| 3 | "(17) Recordkeeping.—The board of trade |
| 4 | shall maintain records of all activities related to the |
| 5 | business of the contract market in a form and man- |
| 6 | ner acceptable to the Commission for a period of 5 |
| 7 | years. |
| 8 | "(18) ANTITRUST CONSIDERATIONS.—Unless |
| 9 | necessary or appropriate to achieve the purposes of |
| 10 | this Act, the board of trade shall endeavor to |
| 11 | avoid— |
| 12 | "(A) adopting any rules or taking any ac- |
| 13 | tions that result in any unreasonable restraints |
| 14 | of trade; or |
| 15 | "(B) imposing any material anticompeti- |
| 16 | tive burden on trading on the contract market. |
| 17 | "(e) CURRENT AGRICULTURAL COMMODITIES.— |
| 18 | " (1) Subject to paragraph (2) of this sub- |
| 19 | section, a contract for purchase or sale for future |
| 20 | delivery of an agricultural commodity enumerated in |
| 21 | section $1a(4)$ that is available for trade on a con- |
| 22 | tract market, as of the date of the enactment of this |
| 23 | subsection, may be traded only on a contract market |
| 24 | designated under this section. |

1 "(2) In order to promote responsible economic 2 or financial innovation and fair competition, the 3 Commission, on application by any person, after no-4 tice and public comment and opportunity for hear-5 ing, may prescribe rules and regulations to provide 6 for the offer and sale of contracts for future delivery 7 or options on such contracts to be conducted on a 8 derivatives transaction execution facility.". 9 SEC. 111. DERIVATIVES TRANSACTION EXECUTION FACILI-10 TIES. 11 The Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.) 12 is amended by inserting after section 5 (as amended by 13 section 110(2)) the following: 14 **"SEC. 5a. DERIVATIVES TRANSACTION EXECUTION FACILI-**15 TIES. "(a) IN GENERAL.—In lieu of compliance with the 16 17 contract market designation requirements of sections 4(a)18 and 5, a board of trade may elect to operate as a reg-19 istered derivatives transaction execution facility if the fa-20 cility is— "(1) designated as a contract market and meets 21 22 the requirements of this section; or 23 "(2) registered as a derivatives transaction exe-24 cution facility under subsection (c) of this section.

25 "(b) Requirements for Trading.—

| 1 | "(1) IN GENERAL.—A registered derivatives |
|----|--|
| 2 | transaction execution facility under subsection (a) |
| 3 | may trade any contract of sale of a commodity for |
| 4 | future delivery (or option on such a contract) on or |
| 5 | through the facility only by satisfying the require- |
| 6 | ments of this section. |
| 7 | "(2) Requirements for underlying com- |
| 8 | MODITIES.—A registered derivatives transaction exe- |
| 9 | cution facility may trade any contract of sale of a |
| 10 | commodity for future delivery (or option on such a |
| 11 | contract) only if— |
| 12 | "(A) the underlying commodity has a near- |
| 13 | ly inexhaustible deliverable supply; |
| 14 | "(B) the underlying commodity has a de- |
| 15 | liverable supply that is sufficiently large that |
| 16 | the contract is highly unlikely to be susceptible |
| 17 | to the threat of manipulation; |
| 18 | "(C) the underlying commodity has no |
| 19 | cash market; |
| 20 | "(D)(i) the contract is a security futures |
| 21 | product, and (ii) the registered derivatives |
| 22 | transaction execution facility is a national secu- |
| 23 | rities exchange registered under the Securities |
| 24 | Exchange Act of 1934; |

| | · - |
|----|---|
| 1 | "(E) the Commission determines, based on |
| 2 | the market characteristics, surveillance history, |
| 3 | self-regulatory record, and capacity of the facil- |
| 4 | ity that trading in the contract (or option) is |
| 5 | highly unlikely to be susceptible to the threat of |
| 6 | manipulation; or |
| 7 | "(F) except as provided in section $5(e)(2)$, |
| 8 | the underlying commodity is a commodity other |
| 9 | than an agricultural commodity enumerated in |
| 10 | section $1a(4)$, and trading access to the facility |
| 11 | is limited to eligible commercial entities trading |
| 12 | for their own account. |
| 13 | "(3) ELIGIBLE TRADERS.—To trade on a reg- |
| 14 | istered derivatives transaction execution facility, a |
| 15 | person shall— |
| 16 | "(A) be an eligible contract participant; or |
| 17 | "(B) be a person trading through a futures |
| 18 | commission merchant that— |
| 19 | "(i) is registered with the Commis- |
| 20 | sion; |
| 21 | "(ii) is a member of a futures self-reg- |
| 22 | ulatory organization or, if the person |
| 23 | trades only security futures products on |
| 24 | the facility, a national securities associa- |

| tion registered under section 15A(a) of the |
|--|
| Securities Exchange Act of 1934; |
| "(iii) is a clearing member of a de- |
| rivatives clearing organization; and |
| "(iv) has net capital of at least |
| \$20,000,000. |
| "(4) TRADING BY CONTRACT MARKETS.—A |
| board of trade that is designated as a contract mar- |
| ket shall, to the extent that the contract market also |
| operates a registered derivatives transaction execu- |
| tion facility— |
| "(A) provide a physical location for the |
| contract market trading of the board of trade |
| that is separate from trading on the derivatives |
| transaction execution facility of the board of |
| trade; or |
| "(B) if the board of trade uses the same |
| electronic trading system for trading on the |
| contract market and derivatives transaction |
| execution facility of the board of trade, identify |
| whether the electronic trading is taking place |
| on the contract market or the derivatives trans- |
| action execution facility. |
| "(c) CRITERIA FOR REGISTRATION.— |
| |

| 1 | "(1) IN GENERAL.—To be registered as a reg- |
|----|---|
| 2 | istered derivatives transaction execution facility, the |
| 3 | board of trade shall be required to demonstrate to |
| 4 | the Commission only that the board of trade meets |
| 5 | the criteria specified in subsection (b) and this sub- |
| 6 | section. |
| 7 | "(2) Deterrence of Abuses.—The board of |
| 8 | trade shall establish and enforce trading and partici- |
| 9 | pation rules that will deter abuses and has the ca- |
| 10 | pacity to detect, investigate, and enforce those rules, |
| 11 | including means to— |
| 12 | "(A) obtain information necessary to per- |
| 13 | form the functions required under this section; |
| 14 | OF |
| 15 | "(B) use technological means to— |
| 16 | "(i) provide market participants with |
| 17 | impartial access to the market; and |
| 18 | "(ii) capture information that may be |
| 19 | used in establishing whether rule violations |
| 20 | have occurred. |
| 21 | "(3) TRADING PROCEDURES.—The board of |
| 22 | trade shall establish and enforce rules or terms and |
| 23 | conditions defining, or specifications detailing, trad- |
| 24 | ing procedures to be used in entering and executing |

| 1 | orders traded on the facilities of the board of trade. |
|----|---|
| 2 | The rules may authorize— |
| 3 | "(A) transfer trades or office trades; |
| 4 | "(B) an exchange of— |
| 5 | "(i) futures in connection with a cash |
| 6 | commodity transaction; |
| 7 | "(ii) futures for cash commodities; or |
| 8 | "(iii) futures for swaps; or |
| 9 | "(C) a futures commission merchant, act- |
| 10 | ing as principal or agent, to enter into or con- |
| 11 | firm the execution of a contract for the pur- |
| 12 | chase or sale of a commodity for future delivery |
| 13 | if the contract is reported, recorded, or cleared |
| 14 | in accordance with the rules of the registered |
| 15 | derivatives transaction execution facility or a |
| 16 | derivatives clearing organization. |
| 17 | "(4) FINANCIAL INTEGRITY OF TRANS- |
| 18 | ACTIONS.—The board of trade shall establish and |
| 19 | enforce rules or terms and conditions providing for |
| 20 | the financial integrity of transactions entered on or |
| 21 | through the facilities of the board of trade, and rules |
| 22 | or terms and conditions to ensure the financial in- |
| 23 | tegrity of any futures commission merchants and in- |
| 24 | troducing brokers and the protection of customer |
| 25 | funds. |

"(d) Core Principles for Registered Deriva Tives Transaction Execution Facilities.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—To maintain the registration of a board of trade as a derivatives transaction
execution facility, a board of trade shall comply with
the core principles specified in this subsection. The
board of trade shall have reasonable discretion in establishing the manner in which the board of trade
complies with the core principles.

10 "(2) COMPLIANCE WITH RULES.—The board of 11 trade shall monitor and enforce the rules of the fa-12 cility, including any terms and conditions of any 13 contracts traded on or through the facility and any 14 limitations on access to the facility.

15 "(3) MONITORING OF TRADING.—The board of 16 trade shall monitor trading in the contracts of the 17 facility to ensure orderly trading in the contract and 18 to maintain an orderly market while providing any 19 necessary trading information to the Commission to 20 allow the Commission to discharge the responsibil-21 ities of the Commission under the Act.

22 "(4) DISCLOSURE OF GENERAL INFORMA23 TION.—The board of trade shall disclose publicly
24 and to the Commission information concerning—
25 "(A) contract terms and conditions;

| 1 | "(B) trading conventions, mechanisms, and |
|----|--|
| 2 | practices; |
| 3 | "(C) financial integrity protections; and |
| 4 | "(D) other information relevant to partici- |
| 5 | pation in trading on the facility. |
| 6 | "(5) Daily publication of trading infor- |
| 7 | MATION.—The board of trade shall make public |
| 8 | daily information on settlement prices, volume, open |
| 9 | interest, and opening and closing ranges for con- |
| 10 | tracts traded on the facility if the Commission deter- |
| 11 | mines that the contracts perform a significant price |
| 12 | discovery function for transactions in the cash mar- |
| 13 | ket for the commodity underlying the contracts. |
| 14 | "(6) FITNESS STANDARDS.—The board of trade |
| 15 | shall establish and enforce appropriate fitness stand- |
| 16 | ards for directors, members of any disciplinary com- |
| 17 | mittee, members, and any other persons with direct |
| 18 | access to the facility, including any parties affiliated |
| 19 | with any of the persons described in this paragraph. |
| 20 | "(7) Conflicts of interest.—The board of |
| 21 | trade shall establish and enforce rules to minimize |
| 22 | conflicts of interest in the decision making process |
| 23 | of the derivatives transaction execution facility and |
| 24 | establish a process for resolving such conflicts of in- |
| 25 | terest. |

| 1 | "(8) RECORDKEEPING.—The board of trade |
|----|---|
| 2 | shall maintain records of all activities related to the |
| 3 | business of the derivatives transaction execution fa- |
| 4 | cility in a form and manner acceptable to the Com- |
| 5 | mission for a period of 5 years. |
| 6 | "(9) ANTITRUST CONSIDERATIONS.—Unless |
| 7 | necessary or appropriate to achieve the purposes of |
| 8 | this Act, the board of trade shall endeavor to |
| 9 | avoid— |
| 10 | "(A) adopting any rules or taking any ac- |
| 11 | tions that result in any unreasonable restraint |
| 12 | of trade; or |
| 13 | "(B) imposing any material anticompeti- |
| 14 | tive burden on trading on the derivatives trans- |
| 15 | action execution facility. |
| 16 | "(e) Use of Broker-Dealers, Depository Insti- |
| 17 | TUTIONS, AND FARM CREDIT SYSTEM INSTITUTIONS AS |
| 18 | Intermediaries.— |
| 19 | "(1) IN GENERAL.—With respect to trans- |
| 20 | actions other than transactions in security futures |
| 21 | products, a registered derivatives transaction execu- |
| 22 | tion facility may by rule allow a broker-dealer, de- |
| 23 | pository institution, or institution of the Farm Cred- |
| 24 | it System that meets the requirements of paragraph |
| 25 | (2) to— |

| 1 | "(A) act as an intermediary in trans- |
|----|--|
| 2 | actions executed on the facility on behalf of cus- |
| 3 | tomers of the broker-dealer, depository institu- |
| 4 | tion, or institution of the Farm Credit System; |
| 5 | and |
| 6 | "(B) receive funds of customers to serve as |
| 7 | margin or security for the transactions. |
| 8 | "(2) REQUIREMENTS.—The requirements re- |
| 9 | ferred to in paragraph (1) are that— |
| 10 | "(A) the broker-dealer be in good standing |
| 11 | with the Securities and Exchange Commission, |
| 12 | or the depository institution or institution of |
| 13 | the Farm Credit System be in good standing |
| 14 | with Federal bank regulatory agencies (includ- |
| 15 | ing the Farm Credit Administration), as appli- |
| 16 | cable; and |
| 17 | "(B) if the broker-dealer, depository insti- |
| 18 | tution, or institution of the Farm Credit Sys- |
| 19 | tem carries or holds customer accounts or funds |
| 20 | for transactions on the derivatives transaction |
| 21 | execution facility for more than 1 business day, |
| 22 | the broker-dealer, depository institution, or in- |
| 23 | stitution of the Farm Credit System is reg- |
| 24 | istered as a futures commission merchant and |
| 25 | is a member of a registered futures association. |

"(3) IMPLEMENTATION.—The Commission shall
 cooperate and coordinate with the Securities and Ex change Commission, the Secretary of the Treasury,
 and Federal banking regulatory agencies (including
 the Farm Credit Administration) in adopting rules
 and taking any other appropriate action to facilitate
 the implementation of this subsection.

"(f) Segregation of Customer Funds.-Not 8 9 later than 180 days after the date of the enactment of 10 the Commodity Futures Modernization Act of 2000, consistent with regulations adopted by the Commission, a reg-11 istered derivatives transaction execution facility may au-12 13 thorize a futures commission merchant to offer any customer of the futures commission merchant that is an eligi-14 15 ble contract participant the right to not segregate the customer funds of the customer that are carried with the fu-16 tures commission merchant for purposes of trading on or 17 through the facilities of the registered derivatives trans-18 19 action execution facility.

20 "(g) Election To Trade Excluded and Exempt
21 Commodities.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding subsection
(b)(2) of this section, a board of trade that is or
elects to become a registered derivatives transaction
execution facility may trade on the facility any

| 1 | agreements, contracts, or transactions involving ex- |
|--|--|
| 2 | cluded or exempt commodities other than securities, |
| 3 | except contracts of sale for future delivery of exempt |
| 4 | securities under section $3(a)(12)$ of the Securities |
| 5 | Exchange Act of 1934 as in effect on the date of the |
| 6 | enactment of the Futures Trading Act of 1982, that |
| 7 | are otherwise excluded from this Act under section |
| 8 | 2(c), 2(d), or 2(g) of this Act, or exempt under sec- |
| 9 | tion 2(h) of this Act. |
| | |
| 10 | ((2) Exclusive jurisdiction of the com- |
| 10 11 | "(2) Exclusive jurisdiction of the com- mission.—The Commission shall have exclusive ju- |
| | |
| 11 | MISSION.—The Commission shall have exclusive ju- |
| 11 12 | MISSION.—The Commission shall have exclusive ju- risdiction over agreements, contracts, or transactions |
| 11 12 13 | MISSION.—The Commission shall have exclusive ju- risdiction over agreements, contracts, or transactions described in paragraph (1) to the extent that the |
| 11 12 13 14 | MISSION.—The Commission shall have exclusive ju- risdiction over agreements, contracts, or transactions described in paragraph (1) to the extent that the agreements, contracts, or transactions are traded on |
| 11 12 13 14 15 | MISSION.—The Commission shall have exclusive ju- risdiction over agreements, contracts, or transactions described in paragraph (1) to the extent that the agreements, contracts, or transactions are traded on a derivatives transaction execution facility.". |

19 1991 is amended—

20 (1) by inserting before the section heading for21 section 401, the following new heading:

22 "CHAPTER 1—BILATERAL AND CLEARING 23 ORGANIZATION NETTING";

24 (2) in section 402, by striking "this subtitle"25 and inserting "this chapter"; and

(3) by inserting after section 407, the following
 new chapter:

3 "CHAPTER 2—MULTILATERAL CLEARING 4 ORGANIZATIONS

5 "SEC. 408. DEFINITIONS.

6 For purposes of this chapter, the following definitions7 shall apply:

8 ((1))MULTILATERAL CLEARING ORGANIZA-9 TION.—The term 'multilateral clearing organization' 10 means a system utilized by more than two partici-11 pants in which the bilateral credit exposures of par-12 ticipants arising from the transactions cleared are 13 effectively eliminated and replaced by a system of 14 guarantees, insurance, or mutualized risk of loss.

15 "(2) OVER-THE-COUNTER DERIVATIVE INSTRU16 MENT.—The term 'over-the-counter derivative in17 strument' includes—

18 "(A) any agreement, contract, or trans-19 action, including the terms and conditions in-20 corporated by reference in any such agreement, 21 contract, or transaction, which is an interest 22 rate swap, option, or forward agreement, in-23 cluding a rate floor, rate cap, rate collar, cross-24 currency rate swap, basis swap, and forward 25 rate agreement; a same day-tomorrow, tomor-

| 1 | row-next, forward, or other foreign exchange or |
|----|---|
| 2 | precious metals agreement; a currency swap, |
| 3 | option, or forward agreement; an equity index |
| 4 | or equity swap, option, or forward agreement; a |
| 5 | debt index or debt swap, option, or forward |
| 6 | agreement; a credit spread or credit swap, op- |
| 7 | tion, or forward agreement; a commodity index |
| 8 | or commodity swap, option, or forward agree- |
| 9 | ment; and a weather swap, weather derivative, |
| 10 | or weather option; |
| 11 | "(B) any agreement, contract or trans- |
| 12 | action similar to any other agreement, contract, |
| 13 | or transaction referred to in this clause that is |
| 14 | presently, or in the future becomes, regularly |
| 15 | entered into by parties that participate in swap |
| 16 | transactions (including terms and conditions in- |
| 17 | corporated by reference in the agreement) and |
| 18 | that is a forward, swap, or option on one or |
| 19 | more occurrences of any event, rates, cur- |
| 20 | rencies, commodities, equity securities or other |
| 21 | equity instruments, debt securities or other debt |
| 22 | instruments, economic or other indices or meas- |
| 23 | ures of economic or other risk or value; |
| 24 | "(C) any agreement, contract, or trans- |

24 "(C) any agreement, contract, or trans-25 action excluded from the Commodity Exchange

| 1 | Act under section $2(c)$, $2(d)$, $2(f)$, or $2(g)$ of |
|----|---|
| 2 | such Act, or exempted under section 2(h) or |
| 3 | 4(c) of such Act; and |
| 4 | "(D) any option to enter into any, or any |
| 5 | combination of, agreements, contracts or trans- |
| 6 | actions referred to in this subparagraph. |
| 7 | "(3) Other definitions.—The terms 'insured |
| 8 | State nonmember bank', 'State member bank', and |
| 9 | 'affiliate' have the same meanings as in section 3 of |
| 10 | the Federal Deposit Insurance Act. |
| 11 | "SEC 400 MILL TH ATEDAL CLEADING ODCANIZATIONS |

11 "SEC. 409. MULTILATERAL CLEARING ORGANIZATIONS.

"(a) IN GENERAL.—Except with respect to clearing 12 13 organizations described in subsection (b), no person may operate a multilateral clearing organization for over-the-14 15 counter derivative instruments, or otherwise engage in activities that constitute such a multilateral clearing organi-16 17 zation unless the person is a national bank, a State member bank, an insured State nonmember bank, an affiliate 18 of a national bank, a State member bank, or an insured 19 20 State nonmember bank, or a corporation chartered under 21 section 25A of the Federal Reserve Act.

22 "(b) CLEARING ORGANIZATIONS.—Subsection (a)
23 shall not apply to any clearing organization that—

24 "(1) is registered as a clearing agency under
25 the Securities Exchange Act of 1934;

| 1 | "(2) is registered as a derivatives clearing orga- |
|--|--|
| 2 | nization under the Commodity Exchange Act; or |
| 3 | ((3) is supervised by a foreign financial regu- |
| 4 | lator that the Comptroller of the Currency, the |
| 5 | Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, |
| 6 | the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, the Se- |
| 7 | curities and Exchange Commission, or the Com- |
| 8 | modity Futures Trading Commission, as applicable, |
| 9 | has determined satisfies appropriate standards.". |
| 10 | (b) RESOLUTION OF CLEARING BANKS.—The Fed- |
| 11 | eral Reserve Act (12 U.S.C. 221 et seq.) is amended by |
| 12 | inserting after section 9A the following new section: |
| 12 | |
| 13 | "SEC. 9B. RESOLUTION OF CLEARING BANKS. |
| 13 14 | "sec. 98. Resolution of clearing banks. "(a) Conservatorship or Receivership.— |
| | |
| 14 | "(a) Conservatorship or Receivership.— |
| 14 15 | "(a) Conservatorship or Receivership.— "(1) Appointment.—The Board may appoint |
| 14 15 16 | "(a) CONSERVATORSHIP OR RECEIVERSHIP.—"(1) APPOINTMENT.—The Board may appoint a conservator or receiver to take possession and con- |
| 14 15 16 17 | "(a) CONSERVATORSHIP OR RECEIVERSHIP.— "(1) APPOINTMENT.—The Board may appoint a conservator or receiver to take possession and con- trol of any uninsured State member bank which op- |
| 14 15 16 17 18 | "(a) CONSERVATORSHIP OR RECEIVERSHIP.— "(1) APPOINTMENT.—The Board may appoint a conservator or receiver to take possession and con- trol of any uninsured State member bank which op- erates, or operates as, a multilateral clearing organi- |
| 14 15 16 17 18 19 | "(a) CONSERVATORSHIP OR RECEIVERSHIP.— "(1) APPOINTMENT.—The Board may appoint a conservator or receiver to take possession and con- trol of any uninsured State member bank which op- erates, or operates as, a multilateral clearing organi- zation pursuant to section 409 of the Federal De- |
| 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 | "(a) CONSERVATORSHIP OR RECEIVERSHIP.— "(1) APPOINTMENT.—The Board may appoint a conservator or receiver to take possession and con- trol of any uninsured State member bank which op- erates, or operates as, a multilateral clearing organi- zation pursuant to section 409 of the Federal De- posit Insurance Corporation Improvement Act of |
| 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 | "(a) CONSERVATORSHIP OR RECEIVERSHIP.— "(1) APPOINTMENT.—The Board may appoint a conservator or receiver to take possession and con- trol of any uninsured State member bank which op- erates, or operates as, a multilateral clearing organi- zation pursuant to section 409 of the Federal De- posit Insurance Corporation Improvement Act of 1991 to the same extent and in the same manner as |
| 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 | "(a) CONSERVATORSHIP OR RECEIVERSHIP.— "(1) APPOINTMENT.—The Board may appoint a conservator or receiver to take possession and con- trol of any uninsured State member bank which op- erates, or operates as, a multilateral clearing organi- zation pursuant to section 409 of the Federal De- posit Insurance Corporation Improvement Act of 1991 to the same extent and in the same manner as the Comptroller of the Currency may appoint a con- |

paragraph (1) shall exercise the same powers, func tions, and duties, subject to the same limitations, as
 a conservator or receiver for a national bank.

4 "(b) BOARD AUTHORITY.—The Board shall have the 5 same authority with respect to any conservator or receiver appointed under subsection (a), and the uninsured State 6 7 member bank for which the conservator or receiver has 8 been appointed, as the Comptroller of the Currency has 9 with respect to a conservator or receiver for a national 10 bank and the national bank for which the conservator or receiver has been appointed. 11

12 "(c) BANKRUPTCY PROCEEDINGS.—The Board (in 13 the case of an uninsured State member bank which operates, or operates as, such a multilateral clearing organiza-14 15 tion) may direct a conservator or receiver appointed for the bank to file a petition pursuant to title 11, United 16 17 States Code, in which case, title 11, United States Code, 18 shall apply to the bank in lieu of otherwise applicable Fed-19 eral or State insolvency law.".

20 (c) TECHNICAL AND CONFORMING AMENDMENTS TO
21 TITLE 11, UNITED STATES CODE.—

(1) BANKRUPTCY CODE DEBTORS.—Section
109(b)(2) of title 11, United States Code, is amended by striking "; or" and inserting the following: ",
except that an uninsured State member bank, or a

corporation organized under section 25A of the Fed eral Reserve Act, which operates, or operates as, a
 multilateral clearing organization pursuant to sec tion 409 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corpora tion Improvement Act of 1991 may be a debtor if
 a petition is filed at the direction of the Board of
 Governors of the Federal Reserve System; or".

8 (2) CHAPTER 7 DEBTORS.—Section 109(d) of
9 title 11, United States Code, is amended to read as
10 follows:

11 "(d) Only a railroad, a person that may be a debtor 12 under chapter 7 of this title (except a stockbroker or a 13 commodity broker), and an uninsured State member bank, 14 or a corporation organized under section 25A of the Fed-15 eral Reserve Act, which operates, or operates as, a multilateral clearing organization pursuant to section 409 of 16 the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation Improvement 17 18 Act of 1991 may be a debtor under chapter 11 of this title.". 19

20 (3) DEFINITION OF FINANCIAL INSTITUTION.—
21 Section 101(22) of title 11, United States Code, is
22 amended to read as follows:

23 "(22) the term 'financial institution'—

24 "(A) means—

80

| 1 | "(i) a Federal reserve bank or an en- |
|----|--|
| 2 | tity (domestic or foreign) that is a com- |
| 3 | mercial or savings bank, industrial savings |
| 4 | bank, savings and loan association, trust |
| 5 | company, or receiver or conservator for |
| 6 | such entity and, when any such Federal re- |
| 7 | serve bank, receiver, conservator, or entity |
| 8 | is acting as agent or custodian for a cus- |
| 9 | tomer in connection with a securities con- |
| 10 | tract, as defined in section 741 of this |
| 11 | title, the customer; or |
| 12 | "(ii) in connection with a securities |
| 13 | contract, as defined in section 741 of this |
| 14 | title, an investment company registered |
| 15 | under the Investment Company Act of |
| 16 | 1940; and |
| 17 | "(B) includes any person described in sub- |
| 18 | paragraph (A) which operates, or operates as, a |
| 19 | multilateral clearing organization pursuant to |
| 20 | section 409 of the Federal Deposit Insurance |
| 21 | Corporation Improvement Act of 1991;". |
| 22 | (4) Definition of uninsured state mem- |
| 23 | BER BANK.—Section 101 of title 11, United States |
| 24 | Code, is amended by inserting after paragraph (54) |
| 25 | the following new paragraph— |
| | |

| 1 | "(54A) the term 'uninsured State member bank' |
|----|--|
| 2 | means a State member bank (as defined in section 3 of |
| 3 | the Federal Deposit Insurance Act) the deposits of which |
| 4 | are not insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Cor- |
| 5 | poration; and". |
| 6 | (5) SUBCHAPTER V OF CHAPTER 7.— |
| 7 | (A) IN GENERAL.—Section 103 of title 11, |
| 8 | United States Code, is amended— |
| 9 | (i) by redesignating subsections (e) |
| 10 | through (i) as subsections (f) through (j), |
| 11 | respectively; and |
| 12 | (ii) by inserting after subsection (d) |
| 13 | the following new subsection: |
| 14 | "(e) Scope of Application.—Subchapter V of |
| 15 | chapter 7 of this title shall apply only in a case under |
| 16 | such chapter concerning the liquidation of an uninsured |
| 17 | State member bank, or a corporation organized under sec- |
| 18 | tion 25A of the Federal Reserve Act, which operates, or |
| 19 | operates as, a multilateral clearing organization pursuant |
| 20 | to section 409 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corpora- |
| 21 | tion Improvement Act of 1991.". |
| 22 | (B) CLEARING BANK LIQUIDATION.— |
| 23 | Chapter 7 of title 11, United States Code, is |
| 24 | amended by adding at the end the following |
| 25 | new subchapter: |

"SUBCHAPTER V—CLEARING BANK LIQUIDATION

3 **"§ 781. Definitions**

4 "For purposes of this subchapter, the following defi-5 nitions shall apply:

82

6 "(1) BOARD.—The term 'Board' means the
7 Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.
8 "(2) DEPOSITORY INSTITUTION.—The term 'de9 pository institution' has the same meaning as in sec10 tion 3 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act.

"(3) CLEARING BANK.—The term 'clearing
bank' means an uninsured State member bank, or a
corporation organized under section 25A of the Federal Reserve Act, which operates, or operates as, a
multilateral clearing organization pursuant to section 409 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation Improvement Act of 1991.

18 "§ 782. Selection of trustee

19 "(a) IN GENERAL.—

20 "(1) APPOINTMENT.—Notwithstanding any
21 other provision of this title, the conservator or re22 ceiver who files the petition shall be the trustee
23 under this chapter, unless the Board designates an
24 alternative trustee.

"(2) SUCCESSOR.—The Board may designate a
 successor trustee if required.

3 "(b) AUTHORITY OF TRUSTEE.—Whenever the 4 Board appoints or designates a trustee, chapter 3 and sec-5 tions 704 and 705 of this title shall apply to the Board 6 in the same way and to the same extent that they apply 7 to a United States trustee.

8 "§ 783. Additional powers of trustee

9 "(a) DISTRIBUTION OF PROPERTY NOT OF THE ES-10 TATE.—The trustee under this subchapter has power to 11 distribute property not of the estate, including distribu-12 tions to customers that are mandated by subchapters III 13 and IV of this chapter.

14 "(b) DISPOSITION OF INSTITUTION.—The trustee
15 under this subchapter may, after notice and a hearing—
16 "(1) sell the clearing bank to a depository insti17 tution or consortium of depository institutions
18 (which consortium may agree on the allocation of
19 the clearing bank among the consortium);

20 "(2) merge the clearing bank with a depository21 institution;

"(3) transfer contracts to the same extent as
could a receiver for a depository institution under
paragraphs (9) and (10) of section 11(e) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act;

| 1 | "(4) transfer assets or liabilities to a depository |
|----|---|
| 2 | institution; and |
| 3 | ((5) transfer assets and liabilities to a bridge |
| 4 | bank as provided in paragraphs (1) , $(3)(A)$, (5) , and |
| 5 | (6) of section 11(n) of the Federal Deposit Insur- |
| 6 | ance Act, paragraphs (9) through (13) of such sec- |
| 7 | tion, and subparagraphs (A) through (H) and sub- |
| 8 | paragraph (K) of paragraph (4) of such section |
| 9 | 11(n), except that— |
| 10 | "(A) the bridge bank to which such assets |
| 11 | or liabilities are transferred shall be treated as |
| 12 | a clearing bank for the purpose of this sub- |
| 13 | section; and |
| 14 | "(B) any references in any such provision |
| 15 | of law to the Federal Deposit Insurance Cor- |
| 16 | poration shall be construed to be references to |
| 17 | the appointing agency and that references to |
| 18 | deposit insurance shall be omitted. |
| 19 | "(c) Certain Transfers Included.—Any ref- |
| 20 | erence in this section to transfers of liabilities includes a |
| 21 | ratable transfer of liabilities within a priority class. |
| 22 | "§ 784. Right to be heard |

22 **"§ 784. Right to be heard**

23 "The Board or a Federal reserve bank (in the case24 of a clearing bank that is a member of that bank) may

raise and may appear and be heard on any issue in a case
 under this subchapter.".

| 3 | (6) DEFINITIONS OF CLEARING ORGANIZATION, |
|----|---|
| 4 | CONTRACT MARKET, AND RELATED DEFINITIONS |
| 5 | (A) Section 761(2) of title 11, United |
| 6 | States Code, is amended to read as follows: |
| 7 | "(2) 'clearing organization' means a derivatives |
| 8 | clearing organization registered under the Act;". |
| 9 | (B) Section 761(7) of title 11, United |
| 10 | States Code, is amended to read as follows: |
| 11 | "(7) 'contract market' means a registered enti- |
| 12 | ty;". |
| 13 | (C) Section 761(8) of title 11, United |
| 14 | States Code, is amended to read as follows: |
| 15 | "(8) 'contract of sale', 'commodity', 'derivatives |
| 16 | clearing organization', 'future delivery', 'board of |
| 17 | trade', 'registered entity', and 'futures commission |
| 18 | merchant' have the meanings assigned to those |
| 19 | terms in the Act;". |
| 20 | (d) Clerical Amendment.—The table of sections |
| 21 | for chapter 7 of title 11, United States Code, is amended |
| 22 | by adding at the end the following new items: |
| 23 | "SUBCHAPTER V—CLEARING BANK |
| 24 | LIQUIDATION |

"Sec. "781. Definitions. "782. Selection of trustee.

"783. Additional powers of trustee.

"784. Right to be heard.".

(e) RESOLUTION OF EDGE ACT CORPORATIONS.—
 The 16th undesignated paragraph of section 25A of the
 Federal Reserve Act (12 U.S.C. 624) is amended to read
 as follows:

5 "(16) APPOINTMENT OF RECEIVER OR CONSER6 VATOR.—

"(A) IN GENERAL.—The Board may ap-7 8 point a conservator or receiver for a corporation 9 organized under the provisions of this section to 10 the same extent and in the same manner as the 11 Comptroller of the Currency may appoint a con-12 servator or receiver for a national bank, and the 13 conservator or receiver for such corporation 14 shall exercise the same powers, functions, and 15 duties, subject to the same limitations, as a 16 conservator or receiver for a national bank.

17 "(B) Equivalent AUTHORITY.—The 18 Board shall have the same authority with re-19 spect to any conservator or receiver appointed 20 for a corporation organized under the provisions 21 of this section under this paragraph and any 22 such corporation as the Comptroller of the Cur-23 rency has with respect to a conservator or re-24 ceiver of a national bank and the national bank for which a conservator or receiver has been appointed.

"(C) TITLE 11 PETITIONS.—The Board 3 4 may direct the conservator or receiver of a cor-5 poration organized under the provisions of this 6 section to file a petition pursuant to title 11, 7 United States Code, in which case, title 11, 8 United States Code, shall apply to the corpora-9 tion in lieu of otherwise applicable Federal or 10 State insolvency law.".

(f) DERIVATIVES CLEARING ORGANIZATIONS.—The
Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.) is amended
by inserting after section 5a, as added by section 111 of
this Act, the following:

15 "SEC. 5b. DERIVATIVES CLEARING ORGANIZATIONS.

16 "(a) REGISTRATION REQUIREMENT.—It shall be unlawful for a derivatives clearing organization, unless reg-17 istered with the Commission, directly or indirectly to make 18 use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of inter-19 20 state commerce to perform the functions of a derivatives 21 clearing organization described in section 1a(9) of this Act 22 with respect to a contract of sale of a commodity for fu-23 ture delivery (or option on such a contract) or option on 24 a commodity, in each case unless the contract or option—

1

2

"(1) is excluded from this Act by section
 2(a)(1)(C)(i), 2(c), 2(d), 2(f), or 2(g) of this Act or
 title IV of the Commodity Futures Modernization
 Act of 2000, or exempted under section 2(h) or 4(c)
 of this Act; or

6 "(2) is a security futures product cleared by a
7 clearing agency registered under the Securities Ex8 change Act of 1934.

9 "(b) VOLUNTARY REGISTRATION.—A derivatives clearing organization that clears agreements, contracts, or 10 transactions excluded from this Act by section 2(c), 2(d), 11 12 2(f), or 2(g) of this Act or title IV of the Commodity Futures Modernization Act of 2000, or exempted under sec-13 tion 2(h) or 4(c) of this Act, or other over-the-counter de-14 15 rivative instruments (as defined in the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation Improvement Act of 1991) may reg-16 ister with the Commission as a derivatives clearing organi-17 zation. 18

19 "(c) REGISTRATION OF DERIVATIVES CLEARING OR-20 GANIZATIONS.—

21 "(1) APPLICATION.—A person desiring to reg22 ister as a derivatives clearing organization shall sub23 mit to the Commission an application in such form
24 and containing such information as the Commission
25 may require for the purpose of making the deter-

minations required for approval under paragraph
 (2).

3 "(2) Core principles.—

"(A) IN GENERAL.—To be registered and 4 5 to maintain registration as a derivatives clear-6 ing organization, an applicant shall demonstrate 7 to the Commission that the applicant complies 8 with the core principles specified in this para-9 graph. The applicant shall have reasonable dis-10 cretion in establishing the manner in which it 11 complies with the core principles.

"(B) FINANCIAL RESOURCES.—The applicant shall demonstrate that the applicant has
adequate financial, operational, and managerial
resources to discharge the responsibilities of a
derivatives clearing organization.

17 "(C) PARTICIPANT AND PRODUCT ELIGI18 BILITY.—The applicant shall establish—

19 "(i) appropriate admission and con20 tinuing eligibility standards (including ap21 propriate minimum financial requirements)
22 for members of and participants in the or23 ganization; and

| 1 | "(ii) appropriate standards for deter- |
|----|---|
| 2 | mining eligibility of agreements, contracts, |
| 3 | or transactions submitted to the applicant. |
| 4 | "(D) RISK MANAGEMENT.—The applicant |
| 5 | shall have the ability to manage the risks asso- |
| 6 | ciated with discharging the responsibilities of a |
| 7 | derivatives clearing organization through the |
| 8 | use of appropriate tools and procedures. |
| 9 | "(E) Settlement procedures.—The |
| 10 | applicant shall have the ability to— |
| 11 | "(i) complete settlements on a timely |
| 12 | basis under varying circumstances; |
| 13 | "(ii) maintain an adequate record of |
| 14 | the flow of funds associated with each |
| 15 | transaction that the applicant clears; and |
| 16 | "(iii) comply with the terms and con- |
| 17 | ditions of any permitted netting or offset |
| 18 | arrangements with other clearing organiza- |
| 19 | tions. |
| 20 | "(F) TREATMENT OF FUNDS.—The appli- |
| 21 | cant shall have standards and procedures de- |
| 22 | signed to protect and ensure the safety of mem- |
| 23 | ber and participant funds. |
| 24 | "(G) Default rules and proce- |
| 25 | DURES.—The applicant shall have rules and |

| 1 | procedures designed to allow for efficient, fair, |
|----|---|
| 2 | and safe management of events when members |
| 3 | or participants become insolvent or otherwise |
| 4 | default on their obligations to the derivatives |
| 5 | clearing organization. |
| 6 | "(H) RULE ENFORCEMENT.—The appli- |
| 7 | cant shall— |
| 8 | "(i) maintain adequate arrangements |
| 9 | and resources for the effective monitoring |
| 10 | and enforcement of compliance with rules |
| 11 | of the applicant and for resolution of dis- |
| 12 | putes; and |
| 13 | "(ii) have the authority and ability to |
| 14 | discipline, limit, suspend, or terminate a |
| 15 | member's or participant's activities for vio- |
| 16 | lations of rules of the applicant. |
| 17 | "(I) System safeguards.—The applicant |
| 18 | shall demonstrate that the applicant— |
| 19 | "(i) has established and will maintain |
| 20 | a program of oversight and risk analysis to |
| 21 | ensure that the automated systems of the |
| 22 | applicant function properly and have ade- |
| 23 | quate capacity and security; and |
| 24 | "(ii) has established and will maintain |
| 25 | emergency procedures and a plan for dis- |

aster recovery, and will periodically test 1 2 backup facilities sufficient to ensure daily processing, clearing, and settlement of 3 transactions. 4 "(J) REPORTING.—The applicant shall 5 6 provide to the Commission all information nec-7 essarv for the Commission to conduct the over-8 sight function of the applicant with respect to 9 the activities of the derivatives clearing organi-10 zation. "(K) 11 RECORDKEEPING.—The applicant 12 shall maintain records of all activities related to 13 the business of the applicant as a derivatives 14 clearing organization in a form and manner ac-15 ceptable to the Commission for a period of 5 16 years. "(L) PUBLIC INFORMATION.—The appli-17 18 cant shall make information concerning the 19 rules and operating procedures governing the 20 clearing and settlement systems (including de-21 fault procedures) available to market partici-22 pants.

23 "(M) INFORMATION-SHARING.—The appli24 cant shall—

| 00 |
|--|
| "(i) enter into and abide by the terms |
| of all appropriate and applicable domestic |
| and international information-sharing |
| agreements; and |
| "(ii) use relevant information obtained |
| from the agreements in carrying out the |
| clearing organization's risk management |
| program. |
| "(N) ANTITRUST CONSIDERATIONS.—Un- |
| less appropriate to achieve the purposes of this |
| Act, the derivatives clearing organization shall |
| avoid— |
| "(i) adopting any rule or taking any |
| action that results in any unreasonable re- |
| straint of trade; or |
| "(ii) imposing any material anti- |
| competitive burden on trading on the con- |
| tract market. |
| "(3) Orders concerning competition.—A |
| derivatives clearing organization may request the |
| Commission to issue an order concerning whether a |
| rule or practice of the applicant is the least anti- |
| competitive means of achieving the objectives, pur- |
| poses, and policies of this Act. |
| |

93

"(d) EXISTING DERIVATIVES CLEARING ORGANIZA-1 2 TIONS.—A derivatives clearing organization shall be deemed to be registered under this section to the extent 3 4 that the derivatives clearing organization clears agree-5 ments, contracts, or transactions for a board of trade that has been designated by the Commission as a contract mar-6 7 ket for such agreements, contracts, or transactions before 8 the date of the enactment of this section.

9 "(e) Appointment of Trustee.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—If a proceeding under sec-10 11 tion 5e results in the suspension or revocation of the 12 registration of a derivatives clearing organization, or 13 if a derivatives clearing organization withdraws from 14 registration, the Commission, on notice to the de-15 rivatives clearing organization, may apply to the ap-16 propriate United States district court where the de-17 rivatives clearing organization is located for the ap-18 pointment of a trustee.

19 "(2) ASSUMPTION OF JURISDICTION.—If the
20 Commission applies for appointment of a trustee
21 under paragraph (1)—

"(A) the court may take exclusive jurisdiction over the derivatives clearing organization
and the records and assets of the derivatives
clearing organization, wherever located; and

1 "(B) if the court takes jurisdiction under 2 subparagraph (A), the court shall appoint the 3 Commission, or a person designated by the 4 Commission, as trustee with power to take possession and continue to operate or terminate 5 6 the operations of the derivatives clearing orga-7 nization in an orderly manner for the protection 8 of participants, subject to such terms and con-9 ditions as the court may prescribe. 10 "(f) LINKING OF REGULATED CLEARING FACILI-11 TIES.— 12 "(1) IN GENERAL.—The Commission shall fa-

cilitate the linking or coordination of derivatives
clearing organizations registered under this Act with
other regulated clearance facilities for the coordinated settlement of cleared transactions.

17 "(2) COORDINATION.—In carrying out para18 graph (1), the Commission shall coordinate with the
19 Federal banking agencies and the Securities and Ex20 change Commission.".

21 SEC. 113. COMMON PROVISIONS APPLICABLE TO REG22 ISTERED ENTITIES.

The Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.)
is amended by inserting after section 5b (as added by section 112(f)) the following:

1 "SEC. 5c. COMMON PROVISIONS APPLICABLE TO REG-2ISTERED ENTITIES.

3 "(a) ACCEPTABLE BUSINESS PRACTICES UNDER
4 CORE PRINCIPLES.—

5 "(1) IN GENERAL.—Consistent with the pur-6 poses of this Act, the Commission may issue inter-7 pretations, or approve interpretations submitted to 8 the Commission, of sections 5(d), 5a(d), and 9 5b(d)(2) to describe what would constitute an ac-10 ceptable business practice under such sections.

11 "(2) EFFECT OF INTERPRETATION.—An inter12 pretation issued under paragraph (1) shall not pro13 vide the exclusive means for complying with such
14 sections.

15 "(b) DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS UNDER CORE16 PRINCIPLES.—

17 "(1) IN GENERAL.—A contract market or de18 rivatives transaction execution facility may comply
19 with any applicable core principle through delegation
20 of any relevant function to a registered futures asso21 ciation or another registered entity.

"(2) RESPONSIBILITY.—A contract market or
derivatives transaction execution facility that delegates a function under paragraph (1) shall remain
responsible for carrying out the function.

1 "(3) NONCOMPLIANCE.—If a contract market 2 or derivatives transaction execution facility that del-3 egates a function under paragraph (1) becomes 4 aware that a delegated function is not being per-5 formed as required under this Act, the contract mar-6 ket or derivatives transaction execution facility shall 7 promptly take steps to address the noncompliance.

8 "(c) New Contracts, New Rules, and Rule9 Amendments.—

10 "(1) IN GENERAL.—Subject to paragraph (2), a 11 registered entity may elect to list for trading or ac-12 cept for clearing any new contract or other instru-13 ment, or may elect to approve and implement any 14 new rule or rule amendment, by providing to the 15 Commission (and the Secretary of the Treasury, in 16 the case of a contract of sale of a government secu-17 rity for future delivery (or option on such a con-18 tract) or a rule or rule amendment specifically re-19 lated to such a contract) a written certification that 20 the new contract or instrument or clearing of the 21 new contract or instrument, new rule, or rule 22 amendment complies with this Act (including regula-23 tions under this Act).

24 "(2) Prior Approval.—

"(A) IN GENERAL.—A registered entity may request that the Commission grant prior approval to any new contract or other instrument, new rule, or rule amendment.

"(B) PRIOR APPROVAL REQUIRED.-Not-5 6 withstanding any other provision of this section, 7 a designated contract market shall submit to 8 the Commission for prior approval each rule 9 amendment that materially changes the terms 10 and conditions, as determined by the Commis-11 sion, in any contract of sale for future delivery 12 of a commodity specifically enumerated in sec-13 tion 1a(4) (or any option thereon) traded 14 through its facilities if the rule amendment ap-15 plies to contracts and delivery months which 16 have already been listed for trading and have 17 open interest.

"(C) DEADLINE.—If prior approval is requested under subparagraph (A), the Commission shall take final action on the request not
later than 90 days after submission of the request, unless the person submitting the request
agrees to an extension of the time limitation established under this subparagraph.

1

2

3

4

| 1 | "(3) Approval.—The Commission shall ap- |
|----|--|
| 2 | prove any such new contract or instrument, new |
| 3 | rule, or rule amendment unless the Commission |
| 4 | finds that the new contract or instrument, new rule, |
| 5 | or rule amendment would violate this Act. |
| 6 | "(d) VIOLATION OF CORE PRINCIPLES.— |
| 7 | "(1) IN GENERAL.—If the Commission deter- |
| 8 | mines, on the basis of substantial evidence, that a |
| 9 | registered entity is violating any applicable core |
| 10 | principle specified in section 5(d), 5a(d), or |
| 11 | 5b(d)(2), the Commission shall— |
| 12 | "(A) notify the registered entity in writing |
| 13 | of the determination; and |
| 14 | "(B) afford the registered entity an oppor- |
| 15 | tunity to make appropriate changes to bring the |
| 16 | registered entity into compliance with the core |
| 17 | principles. |
| 18 | "(2) FAILURE TO MAKE CHANGES.—If, not |
| 19 | later than 30 days after receiving a notification |
| 20 | under paragraph (1), a registered entity fails to |
| 21 | make changes that, in the opinion of the Commis- |
| 22 | sion, are necessary to comply with the core prin- |
| 23 | ciples, the Commission may take further action in |
| 24 | accordance with this Act. |

"(e) RESERVATION OF EMERGENCY AUTHORITY.—
 Nothing in this section shall limit or in any way affect
 the emergency powers of the Commission provided in sec tion 8a(9).".

5 SEC. 114. EXEMPT BOARDS OF TRADE.

6 The Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.)
7 is amended by inserting after section 5c (as added by sec8 tion 113) the following:

9 "SEC. 5d. EXEMPT BOARDS OF TRADE.

10 "(a) Election To Register With the Commis-SION.—A board of trade that meets the requirements of 11 12 subsection (b) of this section may operate as an exempt 13 board of trade on receipt from the board of trade of a notice, provided in such manner as the Commission may 14 15 by rule or regulation prescribe, that the board of trade elects to operate as an exempt board of trade. Except as 16 17 otherwise provided in this section, no provision of this Act 18 (other than subparagraphs (C) and (D) of sections 2(a)(1)19 and 12(e)(2)(B) shall apply with respect to a contract 20 of sale of a commodity for future delivery (or option on 21 such a contract) traded on or through the facilities of an exempt board of trade. 22

23 "(b) CRITERIA FOR EXEMPTION.—To qualify for an
24 exemption under subsection (a), a board of trade shall
25 limit trading on or through the facilities of the board of

| 1 | trade to contracts of sale of a commodity for future deliv- |
|----|--|
| 2 | ery (or options on such contracts or on a commodity)— |
| 3 | "(1) for which the underlying commodity has— |
| 4 | "(A) a nearly inexhaustible deliverable sup- |
| 5 | ply; |
| 6 | "(B) a deliverable supply that is suffi- |
| 7 | ciently large, and a cash market sufficiently liq- |
| 8 | uid, to render any contract traded on the com- |
| 9 | modity highly unlikely to be susceptible to the |
| 10 | threat of manipulation; or |
| 11 | "(C) no cash market; |
| 12 | ((2) that are entered into only between persons |
| 13 | that are eligible contract participants at the time at |
| 14 | which the persons enter into the contract; and |
| 15 | "(3) that are not contracts of sale (or options |
| 16 | on such a contract or on a commodity) for future |
| 17 | delivery of any security, including any group or |
| 18 | index of securities or any interest in, or based on the |
| 19 | value of, any security or any group or index of secu- |
| 20 | rities. |
| 21 | "(c) Antimanipulation Requirements.—A party |
| 22 | to a contract of sale of a commodity for future delivery |
| 23 | (or option on such a contract or on a commodity) that |
| 24 | is traded on an exempt board of trade shall be subject |
| 25 | to sections 4b, $4c(b)$, $4o$, $6(c)$, and $9(a)(2)$, and the Com- |

mission shall enforce those provisions with respect to any
 such trading.

3 "(d) PRICE DISCOVERY.—If the Commission finds 4 that an exempt board of trade is a significant source of 5 price discovery for transactions in the cash market for the commodity underlying any contract, agreement, or trans-6 7 action traded on or through the facilities of the board of 8 trade, the board of trade shall disseminate publicly on a 9 daily basis trading volume, opening and closing price 10 ranges, open interest, and other trading data as appropriate to the market. 11

12 "(e) JURISDICTION.—The Commission shall have ex-13 clusive jurisdiction over any account, agreement, contract, 14 or transaction involving a contract of sale of a commodity 15 for future delivery, or option on such a contract or on a 16 commodity, to the extent that the account, agreement, 17 contract, or transaction is traded on an exempt board of 18 trade.

19 "(f) SUBSIDIARIES.—A board of trade that is des-20 ignated as a contract market or registered as a derivatives 21 transaction execution facility may operate an exempt 22 board of trade by establishing a separate subsidiary or 23 other legal entity and otherwise satisfying the require-24 ments of this section. "(g) An exempt board of trade that meets the re quirements of subsection (b) shall not represent to any
 person that the board of trade is registered with, or des ignated, recognized, licensed, or approved by the Commis sion.".

6 SEC. 115. SUSPENSION OR REVOCATION OF DESIGNATION 7 AS CONTRACT MARKET.

8 Section 5e of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C.
9 7b) (as redesignated by section 20(1)) is amended to read
10 as follows:

11 "SEC. 5e. SUSPENSION OR REVOCATION OF DESIGNATION 12 AS REGISTERED ENTITY.

13 "The failure of a registered entity to comply with any 14 provision of this Act, or any regulation or order of the 15 Commission under this Act, shall be cause for the suspen-16 sion of the registered entity for a period not to exceed 180 17 days, or revocation of designation as a registered entity 18 in accordance with the procedures and subject to the judi-19 cial review provided in section 6(b).".

20 SEC. 116. AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.

21 Section 12(d) of the Commodity Exchange Act (7
22 U.S.C. 16(d)) is amended by striking "2000" and insert23 ing "2005".

1 SEC. 117. PREEMPTION.

| 2 | Section 12 of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. |
|----|--|
| 3 | 16(e)) is amended by striking subsection (e) and inserting |
| 4 | the following: |
| 5 | "(e) Relation to Other Law, Departments, or |
| 6 | Agencies.— |
| 7 | "(1) Nothing in this Act shall supersede or |
| 8 | preempt— |
| 9 | "(A) criminal prosecution under any Fed- |
| 10 | eral criminal statute; |
| 11 | "(B) the application of any Federal or |
| 12 | State statute (except as provided in paragraph |
| 13 | (2)), including any rule or regulation there- |
| 14 | under, to any transaction in or involving any |
| 15 | commodity, product, right, service, or interest— |
| 16 | "(i) that is not conducted on or sub- |
| 17 | ject to the rules of a registered entity or |
| 18 | exempt board of trade; |
| 19 | "(ii) (except as otherwise specified by |
| 20 | the Commission by rule or regulation) that |
| 21 | is not conducted on or subject to the rules |
| 22 | of any board of trade, exchange, or market |
| 23 | located outside the United States, its terri- |
| 24 | tories or possessions; or |

| | 105 |
|----|--|
| 1 | "(iii) that is not subject to regulation |
| 2 | by the Commission under section 4c or 19; |
| 3 | OF |
| 4 | "(C) the application of any Federal or |
| 5 | State statute, including any rule or regulation |
| 6 | thereunder, to any person required to be reg- |
| 7 | istered or designated under this Act who shall |
| 8 | fail or refuse to obtain such registration or des- |
| 9 | ignation. |
| 10 | "(2) This Act shall supersede and preempt the |
| 11 | application of any State or local law that prohibits |
| 12 | or regulates gaming or the operation of bucket shops |
| 13 | (other than antifraud provisions of general applica- |
| 14 | bility) in the case of— |
| 15 | "(A) an electronic trading facility excluded |
| 16 | under section 2(e) of this Act; and |
| 17 | "(B) an agreement, contract, or trans- |
| 18 | action that is excluded from this Act under sec- |
| 19 | tion 2(c), 2(d), 2(f), or 2(g) of this Act or title |
| 20 | IV of the Commodity Futures Modernization |
| 21 | Act of 2000, or exempted under section 2(h) or |
| 22 | 4(c) of this Act (regardless of whether any such |
| 23 | agreement, contract, or transaction is otherwise |
| 24 | subject to this Act).". |

106

3 Section 14 of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C.
4 18) is amended by striking subsection (g) and inserting
5 the following:

6 "(g) Predispute Resolution Agreements for 7 INSTITUTIONAL CUSTOMERS.—Nothing in this section 8 prohibits a registered futures commission merchant from 9 requiring a customer that is an eligible contract participant, as a condition to the commission merchant's con-10 11 ducting a transaction for the customer, to enter into an agreement waiving the right to file a claim under this sec-12 tion.". 13

14SEC. 119. CONSIDERATION OF COSTS AND BENEFITS AND15ANTITRUST LAWS.

Section 15 of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C.
17 19) is amended by striking "SEC. 15. The Commission"
18 and inserting the following:

19 "SEC. 15. CONSIDERATION OF COSTS AND BENEFITS AND
20 ANTITRUST LAWS.

21 "(a) COSTS AND BENEFITS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Before promulgating a regulation under this Act or issuing an order (except as
provided in paragraph (3)), the Commission shall
consider the costs and benefits of the action of the
Commission.

| 1 | "(2) CONSIDERATIONS.—The costs and benefits |
|----|---|
| 2 | of the proposed Commission action shall be evalu- |
| 3 | ated in light of— |
| 4 | "(A) considerations of protection of market |
| 5 | participants and the public; |
| 6 | "(B) considerations of the efficiency, com- |
| 7 | petitiveness, and financial integrity of futures |
| 8 | markets; |
| 9 | "(C) considerations of price discovery; |
| 10 | "(D) considerations of sound risk manage- |
| 11 | ment practices; and |
| 12 | "(E) other public interest considerations. |
| 13 | "(3) Applicability.—This subsection does not |
| 14 | apply to the following actions of the Commission: |
| 15 | "(A) An order that initiates, is part of, or |
| 16 | is the result of an adjudicatory or investigative |
| 17 | process of the Commission. |
| 18 | "(B) An emergency action. |
| 19 | "(C) A finding of fact regarding compli- |
| 20 | ance with a requirement of the Commission. |
| 21 | "(b) ANTITRUST LAWS.—The Commission". |
| | |

1SEC. 120. CONTRACT ENFORCEMENT BETWEEN ELIGIBLE2COUNTERPARTIES.

3 Section 22(a) of the Commodity Exchange Act (7
4 U.S.C. 25(a)) is amended by adding at the end the fol5 lowing:

6 "(4) Contract enforcement between eli-7 GIBLE COUNTERPARTIES.—No agreement, contract, 8 or transaction between eligible contract participants 9 or persons reasonably believed to be eligible contract participants, and no hybrid instrument sold to any 10 11 investor, shall be void, voidable, or unenforceable, 12 and no such party shall be entitled to rescind, or re-13 cover any payment made with respect to, such an 14 agreement, contract, transaction, or instrument 15 under this section or any other provision of Federal 16 or State law, based solely on the failure of the agree-17 ment, contract, transaction, or instrument to comply 18 with the terms or conditions of an exemption or ex-19 clusion from any provision of this Act or regulations 20 of the Commission.".

21 SEC. 121. SPECIAL PROCEDURES TO ENCOURAGE AND FA22 CILITATE BONA FIDE HEDGING BY AGRICUL23 TURAL PRODUCERS.

24 The Commodity Exchange Act, as otherwise amended25 by this Act, is amended by inserting after section 40 the26 following:

4 "(a) AUTHORITY.—The Commission shall consider
5 issuing rules or orders which—

6 "(1) prescribe procedures under which each 7 contract market is to provide for orderly delivery, in-8 cluding temporary storage costs, of any agricultural 9 commodity enumerated in section 1a(4) which is the 10 subject of a contract for purchase or sale for future 11 delivery;

12 "(2) increase the ease with which domestic agri-13 cultural producers may participate in contract mar-14 kets, including by addressing cost and margin re-15 quirements, so as to better enable the producers to 16 hedge price risk associated with their production;

"(3) provide flexibility in the minimum quantities of such agricultural commodities that may be
the subject of a contract for purchase or sale for future delivery that is traded on a contract market, to
better allow domestic agricultural producers to hedge
such price risk; and

23 "(4) encourage contract markets to provide in24 formation and otherwise facilitate the participation
25 of domestic agricultural producers in contract mar26 kets.

"(b) REPORT.—Within 1 year after the date of the
 enactment of this section, the Commission shall submit to
 the Committee on Agriculture of the House of Representa tives and the Committee on Agriculture, Nutrition, and
 Forestry of the Senate a report on the steps it has taken
 to implement this section and on the activities of contract
 markets pursuant to this section.".

8 SEC. 122. RULE OF CONSTRUCTION.

9 Except as expressly provided in this Act or an amend10 ment made by this Act, nothing in this Act or an amend11 ment made by this Act supersedes, affects, or otherwise
12 limits or expands the scope and applicability of laws gov13 erning the Securities and Exchange Commission.

14 SEC. 123. TECHNICAL AND CONFORMING AMENDMENTS.

15 (a) Commodity Exchange Act.—

16 (1) Section 1a of the Commodity Exchange Act
17 (7 U.S.C. 1a) (as amended by section 101) is
18 amended—

(A) in paragraphs (5), (6), (16), (17),
(20) (20), and (23), by inserting "or derivatives
transaction execution facility" after "contract
market" each place it appears; and

(B) in paragraph (24)—

| | *** |
|----|--|
| 1 | (i) in the paragraph heading, by strik- |
| 2 | ing "CONTRACT MARKET" and inserting |
| 3 | "REGISTERED ENTITY"; |
| 4 | (ii) by striking "contract market" |
| 5 | each place it appears and inserting "reg- |
| 6 | istered entity"; and |
| 7 | (iii) by adding at the end the fol- |
| 8 | lowing: |
| 9 | "A participant in an alternative trading system that |
| 10 | is designated as a contract market pursuant to sec- |
| 11 | tion 5f is deemed a member of the contract market |
| 12 | for purposes of transactions in security futures prod- |
| 13 | ucts through the contract market.". |
| 14 | (2) Section 2 of the Commodity Exchange Act |
| 15 | (7 U.S.C. 2, 2a, 4, 4a, 3) is amended— |
| 16 | (A) by striking "SEC. 2. $(a)(1)(A)(i)$ The" |
| 17 | and inserting the following: |
| 18 | "SEC. 2. JURISDICTION OF COMMISSION; LIABILITY OF |
| 19 | PRINCIPAL FOR ACT OF AGENT; COMMODITY |
| 20 | FUTURES TRADING COMMISSION; TRANS- |
| 21 | ACTION IN INTERSTATE COMMERCE. |
| 22 | "(a) Jurisdiction of Commission; Commodity |
| 23 | FUTURES TRADING COMMISSION.— |
| 24 | "(1) JURISDICTION OF COMMISSION.— |
| 25 | "(A) IN GENERAL.—The"; and |
| | |

| 1 | (B) in subsection $(a)(1)$ — |
|----|---|
| 2 | (i) in subparagraph (A) (as amended |
| 3 | by subparagraph (A) of this paragraph)— |
| 4 | (I) by striking "subparagraph |
| 5 | (B) of this subparagraph" and insert- |
| 6 | ing "subparagraphs (C) and (D) of |
| 7 | this paragraph and subsections (c) |
| 8 | through (i) of this section"; |
| 9 | (II) by striking "contract market |
| 10 | designated pursuant to section 5 of |
| 11 | this Act" and inserting "contract |
| 12 | market designated or derivatives |
| 13 | transaction execution facility reg- |
| 14 | istered pursuant to section 5 or 5a"; |
| 15 | (III) by striking clause (ii); and |
| 16 | (IV) in clause (iii), by striking |
| 17 | "(iii) The" and inserting the fol- |
| 18 | lowing: |
| 19 | "(B) LIABILITY OF PRINCIPAL FOR ACT OF |
| 20 | AGENT.—The''; and |
| 21 | (ii) in subparagraph (B)— |
| 22 | (I) by striking "(B)" and insert- |
| 23 | ing "(C)"; |
| 24 | (II) in clause (v)— |
| | |

| | 110 |
|----|--|
| 1 | (aa) by striking "section 3 |
| 2 | of the Securities Act of 1933"; |
| 3 | and |
| 4 | (bb) by inserting "or sub- |
| 5 | paragraph (D)" after "subpara- |
| 6 | graph"; and |
| 7 | (III) by moving clauses (i) |
| 8 | through (v) 4 ems to the right; |
| 9 | (C) in subsection $(a)(7)$, by striking "con- |
| 10 | tract market" and inserting "registered entity"; |
| 11 | (D) in subsection (a)(8)(B)(ii)— |
| 12 | (i) in the first sentence, by striking |
| 13 | "designation as a contract market" and in- |
| 14 | serting "designation or registration as a |
| 15 | contract market or derivatives transaction |
| 16 | execution facility"; |
| 17 | (ii) in the second sentence, by striking |
| 18 | "designate a board of trade as a contract |
| 19 | market" and inserting "designate or reg- |
| 20 | ister a board of trade as a contract market |
| 21 | or derivatives transaction execution facil- |
| 22 | ity"; and |
| 23 | (iii) in the fourth sentence, by striking |
| 24 | "designating, or refusing, suspending, or |
| 25 | revoking the designation of, a board of |
| | |

1 trade as a contract market involving trans-2 actions for future delivery referred to in 3 this clause or in considering possible emer-4 gency action under section 8a(9) of this Act" and inserting "designating, reg-5 6 istering, or refusing, suspending, or revok-7 ing the designation or registration of, a 8 board of trade as a contract market or de-9 rivatives transaction execution facility in-10 volving transactions for future delivery re-11 ferred to in this clause or in considering 12 any possible action under this Act (includ-13 ing without limitation emergency action under section 8a(9))", and by striking 14 15 "designation, suspension, revocation, or 16 emergency action" and inserting "designa-17 tion, registration, suspension, revocation, 18 or action"; and 19 (E) in subsection (a), by moving para-

20 graphs (2) through (9) 2 ems to the right.

21 (3) Section 4 of the Commodity Exchange Act
22 (7 U.S.C. 6) is amended—
23 (A) in subsection (a)—

24 (i) in paragraph (1), by striking "des-25 ignated by the Commission as a 'contract

| 1 | market' for" and inserting "designated or |
|----|---|
| 2 | registered by the Commission as a contract |
| 3 | market or derivatives transaction execution |
| 4 | facility for"; |
| 5 | (ii) in paragraph (2), by striking |
| 6 | "member of such"; and |
| 7 | (iii) in paragraph (3), by inserting "or |
| 8 | derivatives transaction execution facility" |
| 9 | after "contract market"; and |
| 10 | (B) in subsection (c)— |
| 11 | (i) in paragraph (1)— |
| 12 | (I) by striking "designated as a |
| 13 | contract market" and inserting "des- |
| 14 | ignated or registered as a contract |
| 15 | market or derivatives transaction exe- |
| 16 | cution facility"; and |
| 17 | (II) by striking "section |
| 18 | 2(a)(1)(B)" and inserting "subpara- |
| 19 | graphs (C)(ii) and (D) of section |
| 20 | 2(a)(1), except that the Commission |
| 21 | and the Securities and Exchange |
| 22 | Commission may by rule, regulation, |
| 23 | or order jointly exclude any agree- |
| 24 | ment, contract, or transaction from |
| 25 | section $2(a)(1)(D)$ "; and |

| 1 | (ii) in paragraph (2)(B)(ii), by insert- |
|----|---|
| 2 | ing "or derivatives transaction execution |
| 3 | facility" after "contract market". |
| 4 | (4) Section 4a of the Commodity Exchange Act |
| 5 | (7 U.S.C. 6a) is amended— |
| 6 | (A) in subsection (a)— |
| 7 | (i) in the first sentence, by inserting |
| 8 | "or derivatives transaction execution facili- |
| 9 | ties" after "contract markets"; and |
| 10 | (ii) in the second sentence, by insert- |
| 11 | ing "or derivatives transaction execution |
| 12 | facility" after "contract market"; |
| 13 | (B) in subsection (b)— |
| 14 | (i) in paragraph (1), by inserting ", or |
| 15 | derivatives transaction execution facility or |
| 16 | facilities," after "markets"; and |
| 17 | (ii) in paragraph (2), by inserting "or |
| 18 | derivatives transaction execution facility" |
| 19 | after "contract market"; and |
| 20 | (C) in subsection (e)— |
| 21 | (i) by striking "contract market or" |
| 22 | each place it appears and inserting "con- |
| 23 | tract market, derivatives transaction execu- |
| 24 | tion facility, or"; |
| | |

| 1 | (ii) by striking "licensed or des- |
|----|---|
| 2 | ignated" each place it appears and insert- |
| 3 | ing "licensed, designated, or registered"; |
| 4 | and |
| 5 | (iii) by striking "contract market, or" |
| 6 | and inserting "contract market or deriva- |
| 7 | tives transaction execution facility, or". |
| 8 | (5) Section 4b(a) of the Commodity Exchange |
| 9 | Act (7 U.S.C. 6b(a)) is amended by striking "con- |
| 10 | tract market" each place it appears and inserting |
| 11 | "registered entity". |
| 12 | (6) Sections 4c(g), 4d, 4e, and 4f of the Com- |
| 13 | modity Exchange Act $(7 \text{ U.S.C. } 6c(g), 6d, 6e, 6f)$ |
| 14 | are amended by inserting "or derivatives transaction |
| 15 | execution facility" after "contract market" each |
| 16 | place it appears. |
| 17 | (7) Section 4g of the Commodity Exchange Act |
| 18 | (7 U.S.C. 6g) is amended— |
| 19 | (A) in subsection (b), by striking "clear- |
| 20 | inghouse and contract market" and inserting |
| 21 | "registered entity"; and |
| 22 | (B) in subsection (f), by striking "clear- |
| 23 | inghouses, contract markets, and exchanges" |
| 24 | and inserting "registered entities". |
| | |

| 1 | (8) Section 4h of the Commodity Exchange Act |
|----|---|
| 2 | (7 U.S.C. 6h) is amended by striking "contract mar- |
| 3 | ket" each place it appears and inserting "registered |
| 4 | entity". |
| 5 | (9) Section 4i of the Commodity Exchange Act |
| 6 | (7 U.S.C. 6i) is amended in the first sentence by in- |
| 7 | serting "or derivatives transaction execution facility" |
| 8 | after "contract market". |
| 9 | (10) Section 4l of the Commodity Exchange Act |
| 10 | (7 U.S.C. 6l) is amended by inserting "or derivatives |
| 11 | transaction execution facilities" after "contract mar- |
| 12 | kets" each place it appears. |
| 13 | (11) Section 4p of the Commodity Exchange |
| 14 | Act (7 U.S.C. 6p) is amended— |
| 15 | (A) in the third sentence of subsection (a), |
| 16 | by striking "Act or contract markets" and in- |
| 17 | serting "Act, contract markets, or derivatives |
| 18 | transaction execution facilities"; and |
| 19 | (B) in subsection (b), by inserting "deriva- |
| 20 | tives transaction execution facility," after "con- |
| 21 | tract market,". |
| 22 | (12) Section 6 of the Commodity Exchange Act |
| 23 | (7 U.S.C. 8, 9, 9a, 9b, 13b, 15) is amended— |
| 24 | (A) in subsection (a)— |
| 25 | (i) in the first sentence— |

| 1 | (I) by striking "board of trade |
|----|--|
| 2 | desiring to be designated a 'contract |
| 3 | market' shall make application to the |
| 4 | Commission for such designation" and |
| 5 | inserting "person desiring to be des- |
| 6 | ignated or registered as a contract |
| 7 | market or derivatives transaction exe- |
| 8 | cution facility shall make application |
| 9 | to the Commission for the designation |
| 10 | or registration"; |
| 11 | (II) by striking "above condi- |
| 12 | tions" and inserting "conditions set |
| 13 | forth in this Act''; and |
| 14 | (III) by striking "above require- |
| 15 | ments" and inserting "the require- |
| 16 | ments of this Act"; |
| 17 | (ii) in the second sentence, by striking |
| 18 | "designation as a contract market within |
| 19 | one year" and inserting "designation or |
| 20 | registration as a contract market or de- |
| 21 | rivatives transaction execution facility |
| 22 | within 180 days"; |
| 23 | (iii) in the third sentence— |
| 24 | (I) by striking "board of trade" |
| 25 | and inserting "person"; and |
| | |

| 1 | (II) by striking "one-year period" |
|----|---|
| 2 | and inserting "180-day period"; and |
| 3 | (iv) in the last sentence, by striking |
| 4 | "designate as a 'contract market' any |
| 5 | board of trade that has made application |
| 6 | therefor, such board of trade" and insert- |
| 7 | ing "designate or register as a contract |
| 8 | market or derivatives transaction execution |
| 9 | facility any person that has made applica- |
| 10 | tion therefor, the person'; |
| 11 | (B) in subsection (b)— |
| 12 | (i) in the first sentence— |
| 13 | (I) by striking "designation of |
| 14 | any board of trade as a 'contract mar- |
| 15 | ket' upon" and inserting "designation |
| 16 | or registration of any contract market |
| 17 | or derivatives transaction execution |
| 18 | facility on''; |
| 19 | (II) by striking "board of trade" |
| 20 | each place it appears and inserting |
| 21 | "contract market or derivatives trans- |
| 22 | action execution facility"; and |
| 23 | (III) by striking "designation as |
| 24 | set forth in section 5 of this Act" and |
| 25 | inserting "designation or registration |
| | |

| 1 | as set forth in sections 5 through 5b |
|----|---|
| 2 | or section 5f"; |
| 3 | (ii) in the second sentence— |
| 4 | (I) by striking "board of trade" |
| 5 | the first place it appears and inserting |
| 6 | "contract market or derivatives trans- |
| 7 | action execution facility'; and |
| 8 | (II) by striking "board of trade" |
| 9 | the second and third places it appears |
| 10 | and inserting "person"; and |
| 11 | (iii) in the last sentence, by striking |
| 12 | "board of trade" each place it appears and |
| 13 | inserting "person"; |
| 14 | (C) in subsection (c)— |
| 15 | (i) by striking "contract market" each |
| 16 | place it appears and inserting "registered |
| 17 | entity"; |
| 18 | (ii) by striking "contract markets" |
| 19 | each place it appears and inserting "reg- |
| 20 | istered entities"; and |
| 21 | (iii) by striking "trading privileges" |
| 22 | each place it appears and inserting "privi- |
| 23 | leges''; |
| | |

| 1 | (D) in subsection (d), by striking "contract |
|----|---|
| 2 | market" each place it appears and inserting |
| 3 | "registered entity"; and |
| 4 | (E) in subsection (e), by striking "trading |
| 5 | on all contract markets" each place it appears |
| 6 | and inserting "the privileges of all registered |
| 7 | entities". |
| 8 | (13) Section 6a of the Commodity Exchange |
| 9 | Act (7 U.S.C. 10a) is amended— |
| 10 | (A) in the first sentence of subsection (a), |
| 11 | by striking "designated as a 'contract market' |
| 12 | shall" and inserting "designated or registered |
| 13 | as a contract market or a derivatives trans- |
| 14 | action execution facility"; and |
| 15 | (B) in subsection (b), by striking "des- |
| 16 | ignated as a contract market" and inserting |
| 17 | "designated or registered as a contract market |
| 18 | or a derivatives transaction execution facility". |
| 19 | (14) Section 6b of the Commodity Exchange |
| 20 | Act (7 U.S.C. 13a) is amended— |
| 21 | (A) by striking "contract market" each |
| 22 | place it appears and inserting "registered enti- |
| 23 | ty''; |
| 24 | (B) in the first sentence, by striking "des- |
| 25 | ignation as set forth in section 5 of this Act" |

| 1 | and inserting "designation or registration as set |
|----|---|
| 2 | forth in sections 5 through 5c"; and |
| 3 | (C) in the last sentence, by striking "the |
| 4 | contract market's ability" and inserting "the |
| 5 | ability of the registered entity". |
| 6 | (15) Section 6c(a) of the Commodity Exchange |
| 7 | Act (7 U.S.C. 13a-1(a)) by striking "contract mar- |
| 8 | ket" and inserting "registered entity". |
| 9 | (16) Section 6d(1) of the Commodity Exchange |
| 10 | Act (7 U.S.C. $13a-2(1)$) is amended by inserting |
| 11 | "derivatives transaction execution facility," after |
| 12 | "contract market,". |
| 13 | (17) Section 7 of the Commodity Exchange Act |
| 14 | (7 U.S.C. 11) is amended— |
| 15 | (A) in the first sentence— |
| 16 | (i) by striking "board of trade" and |
| 17 | inserting "person"; |
| 18 | (ii) by inserting "or registered" after |
| 19 | "designated"; |
| 20 | (iii) by inserting "or registration" |
| 21 | after "designation" each place it appears; |
| 22 | and |
| 23 | (iv) by striking "contract market" |
| 24 | each place it appears and inserting "reg- |
| 25 | istered entity"; |

| 1 | (B) in the second sentence— |
|----|---|
| 2 | (i) by striking "designation of such |
| 3 | board of trade as a contract market" and |
| 4 | inserting "designation or registration of |
| 5 | the registered entity'; and |
| 6 | (ii) by striking "contract markets" |
| 7 | and inserting "registered entities"; and |
| 8 | (C) in the last sentence— |
| 9 | (i) by striking "board of trade" and |
| 10 | inserting "person"; and |
| 11 | (ii) by striking "designated again a |
| 12 | contract market" and inserting "des- |
| 13 | ignated or registered again a registered en- |
| 14 | tity". |
| 15 | (18) Section 8(c) of the Commodity Exchange |
| 16 | Act (7 U.S.C. 12(c)) is amended in the first sen- |
| 17 | tence by striking "board of trade" and inserting |
| 18 | "registered entity". |
| 19 | (19) Section 8a of the Commodity Exchange |
| 20 | Act (7 U.S.C. 12a) is amended— |
| 21 | (A) by striking "contract market" each |
| 22 | place it appears and inserting "registered enti- |
| 23 | ty"; and |
| 24 | (B) in paragraph $(2)(F)$, by striking "trad- |
| 25 | ing privileges" and inserting "privileges". |

| 1 | (20) Sections 8b and 8c(e) of the Commodity |
|----|--|
| 2 | Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 12b, 12c(e)) are amended |
| 3 | by striking "contract market" each place it appears |
| 4 | and inserting "registered entity". |
| 5 | (21) Section 8e of the Commodity Exchange |
| 6 | Act (7 U.S.C. 12e) is repealed. |
| 7 | (22) Section 9 of the Commodity Exchange Act |
| 8 | (7 U.S.C. 13) is amended by striking "contract mar- |
| 9 | ket" each place it appears and inserting "registered |
| 10 | entity". |
| 11 | (23) Section 14 of the Commodity Exchange |
| 12 | Act (7 U.S.C. 18) is amended— |
| 13 | (A) in subsection $(a)(1)(B)$, by striking |
| 14 | "contract market" and inserting "registered en- |
| 15 | tity"; and |
| 16 | (B) in subsection (f), by striking "contract |
| 17 | markets" and inserting "registered entities". |
| 18 | (24) Section 17 of the Commodity Exchange |
| 19 | Act (7 U.S.C. 21) is amended by striking "contract |
| 20 | market" each place it appears and inserting "reg- |
| 21 | istered entity". |
| 22 | (25) Section 22 of the Commodity Exchange |
| 23 | Act (7 U.S.C. 25) is amended— |
| 24 | (A) in subsection (a)— |
| 25 | (i) in paragraph (1)— |

| 1 | (I) by striking "contract market, |
|----|---|
| 2 | clearing organization of a contract |
| 3 | market, licensed board of trade," and |
| 4 | inserting "registered entity"; and |
| 5 | (II) in subparagraph (C)(i), by |
| 6 | striking "contract market" and insert- |
| 7 | ing "registered entity"; |
| 8 | (ii) in paragraph (2), by striking "sec- |
| 9 | tions $5a(11)$," and inserting "sections |
| 10 | 5(d)(13), 5b(b)(1)(E),"; and |
| 11 | (iii) in paragraph (3), by striking |
| 12 | "contract market" and inserting "reg- |
| 13 | istered entity'; and |
| 14 | (B) in subsection (b)— |
| 15 | (i) in paragraph (1)— |
| 16 | (I) by striking "contract market |
| 17 | or clearing organization of a contract |
| 18 | market" and inserting "registered en- |
| 19 | tity"; |
| 20 | (II) by striking "section $5a(8)$ |
| 21 | and section 5a(9) of this Act" and in- |
| 22 | serting "sections 5 through 5c"; |
| 23 | (III) by striking "contract mar- |
| 24 | ket, clearing organization of a con- |
| 25 | tract market, or licensed board of |
| | |

| 1 | trade" and inserting "registered enti- |
|----|---|
| 2 | ty"; and |
| 3 | (IV) by striking "contract market |
| 4 | or licensed board of trade" and insert- |
| 5 | ing "registered entity"; |
| 6 | (ii) in paragraph (3)— |
| 7 | (I) by striking "a contract mar- |
| 8 | ket, clearing organization, licensed |
| 9 | board of trade," and inserting "reg- |
| 10 | istered entity"; and |
| 11 | (II) by striking "contract market, |
| 12 | licensed board of trade" and inserting |
| 13 | "registered entity"; |
| 14 | (iii) in paragraph (4), by striking |
| 15 | "contract market, licensed board of trade, |
| 16 | clearing organization," and inserting "reg- |
| 17 | istered entity"; and |
| 18 | (iv) in paragraph (5), by striking |
| 19 | "contract market, licensed board of trade, |
| 20 | clearing organization," and inserting "reg- |
| 21 | istered entity". |
| 22 | (b) FEDERAL DEPOSIT INSURANCE CORPORATION |
| 23 | IMPROVEMENT ACT OF 1991.—Section 402(2) of the Fed- |
| 24 | eral Deposit Insurance Corporation Improvement Act of |

1 1991 (12 U.S.C. 4402(2)) is amended by striking sub 2 paragraph (B) and inserting the following:

3 "(B) that is registered as a derivatives
4 clearing organization under section 5b of the
5 Commodity Exchange Act.".

6 SEC. 124. PRIVACY.

7 The Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 1 et seq.)
8 is amended by inserting after section 5f (as added by sec9 tion 252) the following:

10 **"SEC. 5g. PRIVACY.**

11 "(a) TREATMENT AS FINANCIAL INSTITUTIONS.— 12 Notwithstanding section 509(3)(B) of the Gramm-Leach-13 Bliley Act, any futures commission merchant, commodity trading advisor, commodity pool operator, or introducing 14 15 broker that is subject to the jurisdiction of the Commission under this Act with respect to any financial activity 16 shall be treated as a financial institution for purposes of 17 title V of such Act with respect to such financial activity. 18 19 "(b) TREATMENT OF CFTC AS FEDERAL FUNC-TIONAL REGULATOR.—For purposes of title V of such 20 21 Act, the Commission shall be treated as a Federal func-22 tional regulator within the meaning of section 509(2) of 23 such Act and shall prescribe regulations under such title 24 within 6 months after the date of the enactment of this section.". 25

1 SEC. 125. REPORT TO CONGRESS.

2 (a) The Commodity Futures Trading Commission (in 3 this section referred to as the "Commission") shall undertake and complete a study of the Commodity Exchange 4 5 Act (in this section referred to as "the Act") and the Commission's rules, regulations and orders governing the con-6 7 duct of persons required to be registered under the Act, 8 not later than 1 year after the date of the enactment of 9 this Act. The study shall identify—

(1) the core principles and interpretations of acceptable business practices that the Commission has
adopted or intends to adopt to replace the provisions
of the Act and the Commission's rules and regulations thereunder;

15 (2) the rules and regulations that the Commis16 sion has determined must be retained and the rea17 sons therefor;

(3) the extent to which the Commission believes
it can effect the changes identified in paragraph (1)
of this subsection through its exemptive authority
under section 4(c) of the Act; and

(4) the regulatory functions the Commission
currently performs that can be delegated to a registered futures association (within the meaning of
the Act) and the regulatory functions that the Com-

mission has determined must be retained and the
 reasons therefor.

3 (b) In conducting the study, the Commission shall so4 licit the views of the public as well as Commission reg5 istrants, registered entities, and registered futures asso6 ciations (all within the meaning of the Act).

7 (c) The Commission shall transmit to the Committee
8 on Agriculture of the House of Representatives and the
9 Committee on Agriculture, Nutrition, and Forestry of the
10 Senate a report of the results of its study, which shall
11 include an analysis of comments received.

12 SEC. 126. INTERNATIONAL ACTIVITIES OF THE COMMODITY

13 FUTURES TRADING COMMISSION.

14 (a) FINDINGS.—The Congress finds that—

15 (1) derivatives markets serving United States16 industry are increasingly global in scope;

17 (2) developments in data processing and com18 munications technologies enable users of risk man19 agement services to analyze and compare those serv20 ices on a worldwide basis;

(3) financial services regulatory policy must be
flexible to account for rapidly changing derivatives
industry business practices;

(4) regulatory impediments to the operation of
 global business interests can compromise the com petitiveness of United States businesses;

4 (5) events that disrupt financial markets and
5 economies are often global in scope, require rapid
6 regulatory response, and coordinated regulatory ef7 fort across international jurisdictions;

8 (6) through its membership in the International 9 Organisation of Securities Commissions, the Com-10 modity Futures Trading Commission has promoted 11 beneficial communication among market regulators 12 and international regulatory cooperation; and

13 (7) the Commodity Futures Trading Commis-14 sion and other United States financial regulators 15 and self-regulatory organizations should continue to 16 foster productive and cooperative working relation-17 ships with their counterparts in foreign jurisdictions. 18 (b) SENSE OF THE CONGRESS.—It is the sense of 19 the Congress that, consistent with its responsibilities under the Commodity Exchange Act, the Commodity Fu-20 21 tures Trading Commission should, as part of its inter-22 national activities, continue to coordinate with foreign reg-23 ulatory authorities, to participate in international regu-24 latory organizations and forums, and to provide technical

•HR 5660 IH

assistance to foreign government authorities, in order to

2 encourage-3 (1) the facilitation of cross-border transactions 4 through the removal or lessening of any unnecessary legal or practical obstacles; 5 6 (2) the development of internationally accepted 7 regulatory standards of best practice; 8 (3) the enhancement of international super-9 visory cooperation and emergency procedures; (4) the strengthening of international coopera-10 11 tion for customer and market protection; and 12 (5) improvements in the quality and timeliness 13 of international information sharing. TITLE II—COORDINATED REGU-14 OF **SECURITY** LATION FU-15 **TURES PRODUCTS** 16 Subtitle A—Securities Law 17 Amendments 18 19 SEC. 201. DEFINITIONS UNDER THE SECURITIES EX-20 CHANGE ACT OF 1934. 21 Section 3(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 22 (15 U.S.C. 78c(a)) is amended— 23 (1) in paragraph (10), by inserting "security future," after "treasury stock,"; 24

(2) by striking paragraph (11) and inserting
 the following:

3 "(11) The term 'equity security' means any 4 stock or similar security; or any security future on 5 any such security; or any security convertible, with 6 or without consideration, into such a security, or 7 carrying any warrant or right to subscribe to or pur-8 chase such a security; or any such warrant or right; 9 or any other security which the Commission shall 10 deem to be of similar nature and consider necessary 11 or appropriate, by such rules and regulations as it 12 may prescribe in the public interest or for the pro-13 tection of investors, to treat as an equity security."; 14 (3) in paragraph (13), by adding at the end the 15 following: "For security futures products, such term 16 includes any contract, agreement, or transaction for 17 future delivery.";

(4) in paragraph (14), by adding at the end the
following: "For security futures products, such term
includes any contract, agreement, or transaction for
future delivery."; and

(5) by adding at the end the following:

23 "(55)(A) The term 'security future' means a
24 contract of sale for future delivery of a single secu25 rity or of a narrow-based security index, including

| 1 | any interest therein or based on the value thereof, |
|----|--|
| 2 | except an exempted security under section $3(a)(12)$ |
| 3 | of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 as in effect |
| 4 | on the date of the enactment of the Futures Trading |
| 5 | Act of 1982 (other than any municipal security as |
| 6 | defined in section $3(a)(29)$ as in effect on the date |
| 7 | of the enactment of the Futures Trading Act of |
| 8 | 1982). The term 'security future' does not include |
| 9 | any agreement, contract, or transaction excluded |
| 10 | from the Commodity Exchange Act under section |
| 11 | 2(c), 2(d), 2(f), or 2(g) of the Commodity Exchange |
| 12 | Act (as in effect on the date of the enactment of the |
| 13 | Commodity Futures Modernization Act of 2000) or |
| 14 | title IV of the Commodity Futures Modernization |
| 15 | Act of 2000. |
| 16 | "(B) The term 'narrow-based security index' |
| 17 | means an index— |
| 18 | "(i) that has 9 or fewer component securi- |
| 19 | ties; |
| 20 | "(ii) in which a component security com- |
| 21 | prises more than 30 percent of the index's |
| 22 | weighting; |
| 23 | "(iii) in which the five highest weighted |
| 24 | component securities in the aggregate comprise |

more than 60 percent of the index's weighting; or

"(iv) in which the lowest weighted compo-3 4 nent securities comprising, in the aggregate, 25 5 percent of the index's weighting have an aggre-6 gate dollar value of average daily trading vol-7 ume of less than \$50,000,000 (or in the case of 8 an index with 15 or more component securities, 9 \$30,000,000), except that if there are two or 10 more securities with equal weighting that could 11 be included in the calculation of the lowest weighted component securities comprising, in 12 the aggregate, 25 percent of the index's 13 14 weighting, such securities shall be ranked from 15 lowest to highest dollar value of average daily 16 trading volume and shall be included in the cal-17 culation based on their ranking starting with 18 the lowest ranked security.

19 "(C) Notwithstanding subparagraph (B), an
20 index is not a narrow-based security index if—

21 "(i)(I) it has at least nine component secu22 rities;

23 "(II) no component security comprises
24 more than 30 percent of the index's weighting;
25 and

135

1

"(III) each component security is— 1 "(aa) registered pursuant to section 2 12 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; 3 "(bb) one of 750 securities with the 4 largest market capitalization; and 5 6 "(cc) one of 675 securities with the 7 largest dollar value of average daily trad-8 ing volume; 9 "(ii) a board of trade was designated as a 10 contract market by the Commodity Futures 11 Trading Commission with respect to a contract 12 of sale for future delivery on the index, before 13 the date of the enactment of the Commodity 14 Futures Modernization Act of 2000; "(iii)(I) a contract of sale for future deliv-15 16 ery on the index traded on a designated con-17 tract market or registered derivatives trans-18 action execution facility for at least 30 days as 19 a contract of sale for future delivery on an 20 index that was not a narrow-based security 21 index; and 22 "(II) it has been a narrow-based security 23 index for no more than 45 business days over

3 consecutive calendar months;

| 1 | "(iv) a contract of sale for future delivery |
|----|---|
| 2 | on the index is traded on or subject to the rules |
| 3 | of a foreign board of trade and meets such re- |
| 4 | quirements as are jointly established by rule or |
| 5 | regulation by the Commission and the Com- |
| 6 | modity Futures Trading Commission; |
| 7 | "(v) no more than 18 months have passed |
| 8 | since the date of the enactment of the Com- |
| 9 | modity Futures Modernization Act of 2000 |
| 10 | and— |
| 11 | "(I) it is traded on or subject to the |
| 12 | rules of a foreign board of trade; |
| 13 | "(II) the offer and sale in the United |
| 14 | States of a contract of sale for future de- |
| 15 | livery on the index was authorized before |
| 16 | the date of the enactment of the Com- |
| 17 | modity Futures Modernization Act of |
| 18 | 2000; and |
| 19 | "(III) the conditions of such author- |
| 20 | ization continue to be met; or |
| 21 | "(vi) a contract of sale for future delivery |
| 22 | on the index is traded on or subject to the rules |
| 23 | of a board of trade and meets such require- |
| 24 | ments as are jointly established by rule, regula- |

| 1 | tion, or order by the Commission and the Com- |
|----|--|
| 2 | modity Futures Trading Commission. |
| 3 | "(D) Within 1 year after the enactment of the |
| 4 | Commodity Futures Modernization Act of 2000, the |
| 5 | Commission and the Commodity Futures Trading |
| 6 | Commission jointly shall adopt rules or regulations |
| 7 | that set forth the requirements under clause (iv) of |
| 8 | subparagraph (C). |
| 9 | "(E) An index that is a narrow-based security |
| 10 | index solely because it was a narrow-based security |
| 11 | index for more than 45 business days over 3 con- |
| 12 | secutive calendar months pursuant to clause (iii) of |
| 13 | subparagraph (C) shall not be a narrow-based secu- |
| 14 | rity index for the 3 following calendar months. |
| 15 | ((F) For purposes of subparagraphs (B) and |
| 16 | (C) of this paragraph— |
| 17 | "(i) the dollar value of average daily trad- |
| 18 | ing volume and the market capitalization shall |
| 19 | be calculated as of the preceding 6 full calendar |
| 20 | months; and |
| 21 | "(ii) the Commission and the Commodity |
| 22 | Futures Trading Commission shall, by rule or |
| 23 | regulation, jointly specify the method to be used |
| 24 | to determine market capitalization and dollar |
| 25 | value of average daily trading volume. |

"(56) The term 'security futures product'
 means a security future or any put, call, straddle,
 option, or privilege on any security future.

4 "(57)(A) The term 'margin', when used with 5 respect to a security futures product, means the 6 amount, type, and form of collateral required to se-7 cure any extension or maintenance of credit, or the 8 amount, type, and form of collateral required as a 9 performance bond related to the purchase, sale, or 10 carrying of a security futures product.

11 "(B) The terms 'margin level' and 'level of mar-12 gin', when used with respect to a security futures 13 product, mean the amount of margin required to se-14 cure any extension or maintenance of credit, or the 15 amount of margin required as a performance bond 16 related to the purchase, sale, or carrying of a secu-17 rity futures product.

18 "(C) The terms 'higher margin level' and 'high-19 er level of margin', when used with respect to a se-20 curity futures product, mean a margin level estab-21 lished by a national securities exchange registered 22 pursuant to section 6(g) that is higher than the min-23 imum amount established and in effect pursuant to 24 section 7(c)(2)(B).".

1SEC. 202. REGULATORY RELIEF FOR MARKETS TRADING2SECURITY FUTURES PRODUCTS.

3 (a) EXPEDITED REGISTRATION AND EXEMPTION.—
4 Section 6 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15)
5 U.S.C. 78f) is amended by adding at the end the fol6 lowing:

7 "(g) NOTICE REGISTRATION OF SECURITY FUTURES
8 PRODUCT EXCHANGES.—

9 "(1) REGISTRATION REQUIRED.—An exchange 10 that lists or trades security futures products may 11 register as a national securities exchange solely for 12 the purposes of trading security futures products 13 if—

14 "(A) the exchange is a board of trade, as
15 that term is defined by the Commodity Ex16 change Act (7 U.S.C. 1a(2)), that—

17 "(i) has been designated a contract
18 market by the Commodity Futures Trad19 ing Commission and such designation is
20 not suspended by order of the Commodity
21 Futures Trading Commission; or

22 "(ii) is registered as a derivative
23 transaction execution facility under section
24 5a of the Commodity Exchange Act and
25 such registration is not suspended by the

| 1 | Commodity Futures Trading Commission; |
|----|---|
| 2 | and |
| 3 | "(B) such exchange does not serve as a |
| 4 | market place for transactions in securities other |
| 5 | than— |
| 6 | "(i) security futures products; or |
| 7 | "(ii) futures on exempted securities or |
| 8 | groups or indexes of securities or options |
| 9 | thereon that have been authorized under |
| 10 | section $2(a)(1)(C)$ of the Commodity Ex- |
| 11 | change Act. |
| 12 | "(2) Registration by notice filing.— |
| 13 | "(A) FORM AND CONTENT.—An exchange |
| 14 | required to register only because such exchange |
| 15 | lists or trades security futures products may |
| 16 | register for purposes of this section by filing |
| 17 | with the Commission a written notice in such |
| 18 | form as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe |
| 19 | containing the rules of the exchange and such |
| 20 | other information and documents concerning |
| 21 | such exchange, comparable to the information |
| 22 | and documents required for national securities |
| 23 | exchanges under section 6(a), as the Commis- |
| 24 | sion, by rule, may prescribe as necessary or ap- |
| 25 | propriate in the public interest or for the pro- |
| | |

1 tection of investors. If such exchange has filed 2 documents with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, to the extent that such docu-3 4 ments contain information satisfying the Com-5 mission's informational requirements, copies of 6 such documents may be filed with the Commis-7 sion in lieu of the required written notice. "(B) IMMEDIATE EFFECTIVENESS.—Such 8 9 registration shall be effective contempora-10 neously with the submission of notice, in writ-11 ten or electronic form, to the Commission, ex-12 cept that such registration shall not be effective 13 if such registration would be subject to suspen-14 sion or revocation. "(C) 15 TERMINATION.—Such registration 16 shall be terminated immediately if any of the 17 conditions for registration set forth in this sub-18 section are no longer satisfied. 19 "(3) PUBLIC AVAILABILITY.—The Commission 20 shall promptly publish in the Federal Register an ac-21 knowledgment of receipt of all notices the Commis-22 sion receives under this subsection and shall make 23 all such notices available to the public.

24 "(4) EXEMPTION OF EXCHANGES FROM SPECI25 FIED PROVISIONS.—

| 1 | "(A) TRANSACTION EXEMPTIONS.—An ex- |
|----|--|
| 2 | change that is registered under paragraph (1) |
| 3 | of this subsection shall be exempt from, and |
| 4 | shall not be required to enforce compliance by |
| 5 | its members with, and its members shall not, |
| 6 | solely with respect to those transactions effected |
| 7 | on such exchange in security futures products, |
| 8 | be required to comply with, the following provi- |
| 9 | sions of this title and the rules thereunder: |
| 10 | "(i) Subsections (b)(2), (b)(3), (b)(4), |
| 11 | (b)(7), (b)(9), (c), (d), and (e) of this sec- |
| 12 | tion. |
| 13 | "(ii) Section 8. |
| 14 | "(iii) Section 11. |
| 15 | "(iv) Subsections (d), (f), and (k) of |
| 16 | section 17. |
| 17 | "(v) Subsections (a), (f), and (h) of |
| 18 | section 19. |
| 19 | "(B) RULE CHANGE EXEMPTIONS.—An ex- |
| 20 | change that registered under paragraph (1) of |
| 21 | this subsection shall also be exempt from sub- |
| 22 | mitting proposed rule changes pursuant to sec- |
| 23 | tion 19(b) of this title, except that— |
| 24 | "(i) such exchange shall file proposed |
| 25 | rule changes related to higher margin lev- |

| 1 | els, fraud or manipulation, recordkeeping, |
|----|--|
| 2 | reporting, listing standards, or decimal |
| 3 | pricing for security futures products, sales |
| 4 | practices for security futures products for |
| 5 | persons who effect transactions in security |
| 6 | futures products, or rules effectuating such |
| 7 | exchange's obligation to enforce the securi- |
| 8 | ties laws pursuant to section $19(b)(7)$; |
| 9 | "(ii) such exchange shall file pursuant |
| 10 | to sections $19(b)(1)$ and $19(b)(2)$ proposed |
| 11 | rule changes related to margin, except for |
| 12 | changes resulting in higher margin levels; |
| 13 | and |
| 14 | "(iii) such exchange shall file pursu- |
| 15 | ant to section $19(b)(1)$ proposed rule |
| 16 | changes that have been abrogated by the |
| 17 | Commission pursuant to section |
| 18 | 19(b)(7)(C). |
| 19 | "(5) TRADING IN SECURITY FUTURES PROD- |
| 20 | UCTS.— |
| 21 | "(A) IN GENERAL.—Subject to subpara- |
| 22 | graph (B), it shall be unlawful for any person |
| 23 | to execute or trade a security futures product |
| 24 | until the later of— |

"(i) 1 year after the date of the enact-1 2 ment of the Commodity Futures Modernization Act of 2000; or 3 "(ii) such date that a futures associa-4 tion registered under section 17 of the 5 6 Commodity Exchange Act has met the re-7 quirements set forth in section 15A(k)(2)8 of this title. 9 "(B) PRINCIPAL-TO-PRINCIPAL TRANS-10 ACTIONS.—Notwithstanding subparagraph (A), 11 a person may execute or trade a security fu-12 tures product transaction if— 13 "(i) the transaction is entered into— 14 "(I) on a principal-to-principal 15 basis between parties trading for their 16 own accounts or as described in sec-17 tion 1a(12)(B)(ii) of the Commodity 18 Exchange Act; and 19 "(II) only between eligible con-20 tract participants (as defined in sub-21 paragraphs (A), (B)(ii), and (C) of 22 such section 1a(12)) at the time at 23 which the persons enter into the 24 agreement, contract, or transaction; 25 and

| | 140 | | | | | |
|----|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 1 | "(ii) the transaction is entered into on | | | | | |
| 2 | or after the later of— | | | | | |
| 3 | "(I) 8 months after the date of | | | | | |
| 4 | the enactment of the Commodity Fu- | | | | | |
| 5 | tures Modernization Act of 2000; or | | | | | |
| 6 | "(II) such date that a futures as- | | | | | |
| 7 | sociation registered under section 17 | | | | | |
| 8 | of the Commodity Exchange Act has | | | | | |
| 9 | met the requirements set forth in sec- | | | | | |
| 10 | tion $15A(k)(2)$ of this title.". | | | | | |
| 11 | (b) Commission Review of Proposed Rule | | | | | |
| 12 | CHANGES.— | | | | | |
| 13 | (1) EXPEDITED REVIEW.—Section 19(b) of the | | | | | |
| 14 | Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78s(b)) | | | | | |
| 15 | is amended by adding at the end the following: | | | | | |
| 16 | "(7) Security futures product rule | | | | | |
| 17 | CHANGES.— | | | | | |
| 18 | "(A) FILING REQUIRED.—A self-regulatory | | | | | |
| 19 | organization that is an exchange registered with | | | | | |
| 20 | the Commission pursuant to section $6(g)$ of this | | | | | |
| 21 | title or that is a national securities association | | | | | |
| 22 | registered pursuant to section 15A(k) of this | | | | | |
| 23 | title shall file with the Commission, in accord- | | | | | |
| 24 | ance with such rules as the Commission may | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |

prescribe, copies of any proposed rule change or

1 any proposed change in, addition to, or deletion 2 from the rules of such self-regulatory organiza-3 tion (hereinafter in this paragraph collectively 4 referred to as a 'proposed rule change') that relates to higher margin levels, fraud or manipu-5 6 lation, recordkeeping, reporting, listing stand-7 ards, or decimal pricing for security futures 8 products, sales practices for security futures 9 products for persons who effect transactions in 10 security futures products, or rules effectuating 11 such self-regulatory organization's obligation to 12 enforce the securities laws. Such proposed rule 13 change shall be accompanied by a concise gen-14 eral statement of the basis and purpose of such 15 proposed rule change. The Commission shall, upon the filing of any proposed rule change, 16 17 promptly publish notice thereof together with 18 the terms of substance of the proposed rule 19 change or a description of the subjects and 20 issues involved. The Commission shall give in-21 terested persons an opportunity to submit data, 22 views, and arguments concerning such proposed 23 rule change.

24 "(B) FILING WITH CFTC.—A proposed rule25 change filed with the Commission pursuant to

| 1 | subparagraph (A) shall be filed concurrently |
|----|--|
| 2 | with the Commodity Futures Trading Commis- |
| 3 | sion. Such proposed rule change may take ef- |
| 4 | fect upon filing of a written certification with |
| 5 | the Commodity Futures Trading Commission |
| 6 | under section 5c(c) of the Commodity Exchange |
| 7 | Act, upon a determination by the Commodity |
| 8 | Futures Trading Commission that review of the |
| 9 | proposed rule change is not necessary, or upon |
| 10 | approval of the proposed rule change by the |
| 11 | Commodity Futures Trading Commission. |
| 12 | "(C) Abrogation of rule changes.— |
| 13 | Any proposed rule change of a self-regulatory |
| 14 | organization that has taken effect pursuant to |
| 15 | subparagraph (B) may be enforced by such self- |
| 16 | regulatory organization to the extent such rule |
| 17 | is not inconsistent with the provisions of this |
| 18 | title, the rules and regulations thereunder, and |
| 19 | applicable Federal law. At any time within 60 |
| 20 | days of the date of the filing of a written cer- |
| 21 | tification with the Commodity Futures Trading |
| 22 | Commission under section 5c(c) of the Com- |
| 23 | modity Exchange Act, the date the Commodity |
| 24 | Futures Trading Commission determines that |

review of such proposed rule change is not nec-

| 1 | essary, or the date the Commodity Futures |
|----|---|
| 2 | Trading Commission approves such proposed |
| 3 | rule change, the Commission, after consultation |
| 4 | with the Commodity Futures Trading Commis- |
| 5 | sion, may summarily abrogate the proposed rule |
| 6 | change and require that the proposed rule |
| 7 | change be refiled in accordance with the provi- |
| 8 | sions of paragraph (1), if it appears to the |
| 9 | Commission that such proposed rule change un- |
| 10 | duly burdens competition or efficiency, conflicts |
| 11 | with the securities laws, or is inconsistent with |
| 12 | the public interest and the protection of inves- |
| 13 | tors. Commission action pursuant to the pre- |
| 14 | ceding sentence shall not affect the validity or |
| 15 | force of the rule change during the period it |
| 16 | was in effect and shall not be reviewable under |
| 17 | section 25 of this title nor deemed to be a final |
| 18 | agency action for purposes of section 704 of |
| 19 | title 5, United States Code. |
| 20 | "(D) REVIEW OF RESUBMITTED ABRO- |
| 21 | GATED RULES.— |
| 22 | "(i) PROCEEDINGS.—Within 35 days |
| 23 | of the date of publication of notice of the |
| 24 | filing of a proposed rule change that is ab- |
| 25 | rogated in accordance with subparagraph |

| 1 | (C) and refiled in accordance with para- |
|----|--|
| | |
| 2 | graph (1), or within such longer period as |
| 3 | the Commission may designate up to 90 |
| 4 | days after such date if the Commission |
| 5 | finds such longer period to be appropriate |
| 6 | and publishes its reasons for so finding or |
| 7 | as to which the self-regulatory organization |
| 8 | consents, the Commission shall— |
| 9 | "(I) by order approve such pro- |
| 10 | posed rule change; or |
| 11 | "(II) after consultation with the |
| 12 | Commodity Futures Trading Commis- |
| 13 | sion, institute proceedings to deter- |
| 14 | mine whether the proposed rule |
| 15 | change should be disapproved. Pro- |
| 16 | ceedings under subclause (II) shall in- |
| 17 | clude notice of the grounds for dis- |
| 18 | approval under consideration and op- |
| 19 | portunity for hearing and be con- |
| 20 | cluded within 180 days after the date |
| 21 | of publication of notice of the filing of |
| 22 | the proposed rule change. At the con- |
| 23 | clusion of such proceedings, the Com- |
| 24 | mission, by order, shall approve or |
| 25 | disapprove such proposed rule change. |
| | |

| 1 | The Commission may extend the time |
|----|---|
| 2 | for conclusion of such proceedings for |
| 3 | up to 60 days if the Commission finds |
| 4 | good cause for such extension and |
| 5 | publishes its reasons for so finding or |
| 6 | for such longer period as to which the |
| 7 | self-regulatory organization consents. |
| 8 | "(ii) Grounds for approval.—The |
| 9 | Commission shall approve a proposed rule |
| 10 | change of a self-regulatory organization |
| 11 | under this subparagraph if the Commission |
| 12 | finds that such proposed rule change does |
| 13 | not unduly burden competition or effi- |
| 14 | ciency, does not conflict with the securities |
| 15 | laws, and is not inconsistent with the pub- |
| 16 | lic interest or the protection of investors. |
| 17 | The Commission shall disapprove such a |
| 18 | proposed rule change of a self-regulatory |
| 19 | organization if it does not make such find- |
| 20 | ing. The Commission shall not approve any |
| 21 | proposed rule change prior to the 30th day |
| 22 | after the date of publication of notice of |
| 23 | the filing thereof, unless the Commission |
| 24 | finds good cause for so doing and pub- |
| 25 | lishes its reasons for so finding.". |
| | |

| 1 | (2) Decimal pricing provisions.—Section | | | | | | |
|----|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 2 | 19(b) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15) | | | | | | |
| 3 | U.S.C. 78s(b)) is amended by inserting after para- | | | | | | |
| 4 | graph (7) , as added by paragraph (1) , the following: | | | | | | |
| 5 | "(8) DECIMAL PRICING.—Not later than 9 | | | | | | |
| 6 | months after the date on which trading in any secu- | | | | | | |
| 7 | rity futures product commences under this title, all | | | | | | |
| 8 | self-regulatory organizations listing or trading secu- | | | | | | |
| 9 | rity futures products shall file proposed rule changes | | | | | | |
| 10 | necessary to implement decimal pricing of security | | | | | | |
| 11 | futures products. The Commission may not require | | | | | | |
| 12 | such rules to contain equal minimum increments in | | | | | | |
| 13 | such decimal pricing.". | | | | | | |
| 14 | (3) Consultation provisions.—Section 19(b) | | | | | | |
| 15 | of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. | | | | | | |
| 16 | 78s(b)) is amended by inserting after paragraph (8), | | | | | | |
| 17 | as added by paragraph (2), the following: | | | | | | |
| 18 | "(9) Consultation with cftc.— | | | | | | |
| 19 | "(A) CONSULTATION REQUIRED.—The | | | | | | |
| 20 | Commission shall consult with and consider the | | | | | | |
| 21 | views of the Commodity Futures Trading Com- | | | | | | |
| 22 | mission prior to approving or disapproving a | | | | | | |
| 23 | proposed rule change filed by a national securi- | | | | | | |
| 24 | ties association registered pursuant to section | | | | | | |
| 25 | 15A(a) or a national securities exchange subject | | | | | | |

| 1 | to the provisions of subsection (a) that pri- |
|----|--|
| 2 | marily concerns conduct related to transactions |
| 3 | in security futures products, except where the |
| 4 | Commission determines that an emergency ex- |
| 5 | ists requiring expeditious or summary action |
| 6 | and publishes its reasons therefor. |
| 7 | "(B) Responses to CFTC comments and |
| 8 | FINDINGS.—If the Commodity Futures Trading |
| 9 | Commission comments in writing to the Com- |
| 10 | mission on a proposed rule that has been pub- |
| 11 | lished for comment, the Commission shall re- |
| 12 | spond in writing to such written comment be- |
| 13 | fore approving or disapproving the proposed |
| 14 | rule. If the Commodity Futures Trading Com- |
| 15 | mission determines, and notifies the Commis- |
| 16 | sion, that such rule, if implemented or as ap- |
| 17 | plied, would— |
| 18 | "(i) adversely affect the liquidity or |
| 19 | efficiency of the market for security fu- |
| 20 | tures products; or |
| 21 | "(ii) impose any burden on competi- |
| 22 | tion not necessary or appropriate in fur- |
| 23 | therance of the purposes of this section, |
| 24 | the Commission shall, prior to approving or dis- |
| 25 | approving the proposed rule, find that such rule |

is necessary and appropriate in furtherance of
 the purposes of this section notwithstanding the
 Commodity Futures Trading Commission's de termination.".

5 (c) REVIEW OF DISCIPLINARY PROCEEDINGS.—Sec6 tion 19(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15
7 U.S.C. 78s(d)) is amended by adding at the end the fol8 lowing:

9 "(3) The provisions of this subsection shall apply to 10 an exchange registered pursuant to section 6(g) of this 11 title or a national securities association registered pursu-12 ant to section 15A(k) of this title only to the extent that 13 such exchange or association imposes any final discipli-14 nary sanction for—

15 "(A) a violation of the Federal securities laws16 or the rules and regulations thereunder; or

17 "(B) a violation of a rule of such exchange or 18 association, as to which a proposed change would be 19 required to be filed under section 19 of this title, ex-20 cept that, to the extent that the exchange or associa-21 tion rule violation relates to any account, agreement, 22 contract, or transaction, this subsection shall apply 23 only to the extent such violation involves a security 24 futures product.".

| 1 | SEC. 203. REGULATORY RELIEF FOR INTERMEDIARIES |
|----|---|
| 2 | TRADING SECURITY FUTURES PRODUCTS. |
| 3 | (a) Expedited Registration and Exemptions.— |
| 4 | (1) Amendment.—Section 15(b) of the Securi- |
| 5 | ties Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 780(b)) is |
| 6 | amended by adding at the end the following: |
| 7 | "(11) BROKER/DEALER REGISTRATION WITH |
| 8 | RESPECT TO TRANSACTIONS IN SECURITY FUTURES |
| 9 | PRODUCTS.— |
| 10 | "(A) NOTICE REGISTRATION.— |
| 11 | "(i) CONTENTS OF NOTICE.—Not- |
| 12 | with standing paragraphs (1) and (2) , a |
| 13 | broker or dealer required to register only |
| 14 | because it effects transactions in security |
| 15 | futures products on an exchange registered |
| 16 | pursuant to section $6(g)$ may register for |
| 17 | purposes of this section by filing with the |
| 18 | Commission a written notice in such form |
| 19 | and containing such information con- |
| 20 | cerning such broker or dealer and any per- |
| 21 | sons associated with such broker or dealer |
| 22 | as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe |
| 23 | as necessary or appropriate in the public |
| 24 | interest or for the protection of investors. |
| 25 | A broker or dealer may not register under |
| 26 | this paragraph unless that broker or dealer |

| 1 | is a member of a national securities asso- |
|----|---|
| 2 | ciation registered under section 15A(k). |
| 3 | "(ii) Immediate effectiveness.— |
| 4 | Such registration shall be effective contem- |
| 5 | poraneously with the submission of notice, |
| 6 | in written or electronic form, to the Com- |
| 7 | mission, except that such registration shall |
| 8 | not be effective if the registration would be |
| 9 | subject to suspension or revocation under |
| 10 | paragraph (4). |
| 11 | "(iii) SUSPENSION.—Such registration |
| 12 | shall be suspended immediately if a na- |
| 13 | tional securities association registered pur- |
| 14 | suant to section 15A(k) of this title sus- |
| 15 | pends the membership of that broker or |
| 16 | dealer. |
| 17 | "(iv) TERMINATION.—Such registra- |
| 18 | tion shall be terminated immediately if any |
| 19 | of the above stated conditions for registra- |
| 20 | tion set forth in this paragraph are no |
| 21 | longer satisfied. |
| 22 | "(B) EXEMPTIONS FOR REGISTERED BRO- |
| 23 | KERS AND DEALERS.—A broker or dealer reg- |
| 24 | istered pursuant to the requirements of sub- |
| 25 | paragraph (A) shall be exempt from the fol- |
| | |

| 1 | | | | | | | |
|----|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 1 | lowing provisions of this title and the rules | | | | | | |
| 2 | thereunder with respect to transactions in secu- | | | | | | |
| 3 | rity futures products: | | | | | | |
| 4 | "(i) Section 8. | | | | | | |
| 5 | "(ii) Section 11. | | | | | | |
| 6 | "(iii) Subsections $(c)(3)$ and $(c)(5)$ of | | | | | | |
| 7 | this section. | | | | | | |
| 8 | "(iv) Section 15B. | | | | | | |
| 9 | "(v) Section 15C. | | | | | | |
| 10 | "(vi) Subsections (d), (e), (f), (g), | | | | | | |
| 11 | (h), and (i) of section 17.". | | | | | | |
| 12 | (2) Conforming Amendment.—Section 28(e) | | | | | | |
| 13 | of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. | | | | | | |
| 14 | 78bb(e)) is amended by adding at the end the fol- | | | | | | |
| 15 | lowing: | | | | | | |
| 16 | "(4) The provisions of this subsection shall not apply | | | | | | |
| 17 | with regard to securities that are security futures prod- | | | | | | |
| 18 | ucts.". | | | | | | |
| 19 | (b) FLOOR BROKERS AND FLOOR TRADERS.—Sec- | | | | | | |
| 20 | tion $15(b)$ of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 | | | | | | |
| 21 | U.S.C. 780(b)) is amended by inserting after paragraph | | | | | | |
| 22 | (11), as added by subsection (a), the following: | | | | | | |
| 23 | "(12) EXEMPTION FOR SECURITY FUTURES | | | | | | |
| 24 | PRODUCT EXCHANGE MEMBERS.— | | | | | | |

| 1 | "(A) REGISTRATION EXEMPTION.—A nat- |
|----|--|
| 2 | ural person shall be exempt from the registra- |
| 3 | tion requirements of this section if such |
| 4 | person— |
| 5 | "(i) is a member of a designated con- |
| 6 | tract market registered with the Commis- |
| 7 | sion as an exchange pursuant to section |
| 8 | 6(g); |
| 9 | "(ii) effects transactions only in secu- |
| 10 | rities on the exchange of which such per- |
| 11 | son is a member; and |
| 12 | "(iii) does not directly accept or solicit |
| 13 | orders from public customers or provide |
| 14 | advice to public customers in connection |
| 15 | with the trading of security futures prod- |
| 16 | ucts. |
| 17 | "(B) OTHER EXEMPTIONS.—A natural |
| 18 | person exempt from registration pursuant to |
| 19 | subparagraph (A) shall also be exempt from the |
| 20 | following provisions of this title and the rules |
| 21 | thereunder: |
| 22 | "(i) Section 8. |
| 23 | "(ii) Section 11. |
| 24 | "(iii) Subsections $(c)(3)$, $(c)(5)$, and |
| 25 | |

25 (e) of this section.

| "(iv) | Section 15B. | | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|------|------|------|------|
| "(v) \$ | Section 15C. | | | | |
| ''(vi) | Subsections | (d), | (e), | (f), | (g), |
| (h), and (i | i) of section 1 | 7.". | | | |
| I merene Drees | | Na c | | | ~~~ |

5 (c) LIMITED PURPOSE NATIONAL SECURITIES ASSO6 CIATION.—Section 15A of the Securities Exchange Act of
7 1934 (15 U.S.C. 780–3) is amended by adding at the end
8 the following:

9 "(k) LIMITED PURPOSE NATIONAL SECURITIES AS-10 SOCIATION.—

11 "(1) REGULATION OF MEMBERS WITH RESPECT 12 TO SECURITY FUTURES PRODUCTS.—A futures asso-13 ciation registered under section 17 of the Com-14 modity Exchange Act shall be a registered national 15 securities association for the limited purpose of regulating the activities of members who are registered 16 17 as brokers or dealers in security futures products 18 pursuant to section 15(b)(11).

19 "(2) REQUIREMENTS FOR REGISTRATION.—
20 Such a securities association shall—

"(A) be so organized and have the capacity
to carry out the purposes of the securities laws
applicable to security futures products and to
comply, and (subject to any rule or order of the
Commission pursuant to section 19(g)(2)) to

1

2

3

1 enforce compliance by its members and persons 2 associated with its members, with the provisions 3 of the securities laws applicable to security fu-4 tures products, the rules and regulations there-5 under, and its rules; 6 "(B) have rules that— "(i) are designed to prevent fraudu-7 8 lent and manipulative acts and practices, 9 to promote just and equitable principles of 10 trade, and, in general, to protect investors 11 and the public interest, including rules 12 governing sales practices and the adver-13 tising of security futures products reason-14 ably comparable to those of other national 15 securities associations registered pursuant 16 to subsection (a) that are applicable to se-17 curity futures products; and 18 "(ii) are not designed to regulate by 19 virtue of any authority conferred by this 20 title matters not related to the purposes of 21 this title or the administration of the asso-22 ciation; "(C) have rules that provide that (subject 23 24 to any rule or order of the Commission pursu-

ant to section 19(g)(2)) its members and per-

1 sons associated with its members shall be ap-2 propriately disciplined for violation of any provi-3 sion of the securities laws applicable to security 4 futures products, the rules or regulations thereunder, or the rules of the association, by expul-5 6 sion, suspension, limitation of activities, func-7 tions, and operations, fine, censure, being sus-8 pended or barred from being associated with a 9 member, or any other fitting sanction; and

10 "(D) have rules that ensure that members
11 and natural persons associated with members
12 meet such standards of training, experience,
13 and competence necessary to effect transactions
14 in security futures products and are tested for
15 their knowledge of securities and security fu16 tures products.

17 "(3) EXEMPTION FROM RULE CHANGE SUBMIS18 SION.—Such a securities association shall be exempt
19 from submitting proposed rule changes pursuant to
20 section 19(b) of this title, except that—

21 "(A) the association shall file proposed
22 rule changes related to higher margin levels,
23 fraud or manipulation, recordkeeping, report24 ing, listing standards, or decimal pricing for se25 curity futures products, sales practices for, ad-

| 1 | vertising of, or standards of training, experi- |
|----|--|
| 2 | ence, competence, or other qualifications for se- |
| 3 | curity futures products for persons who effect |
| 4 | transactions in security futures products, or |
| 5 | rules effectuating the association's obligation to |
| 6 | enforce the securities laws pursuant to section |
| 7 | 19(b)(7); |
| 8 | "(B) the association shall file pursuant to |
| 9 | sections $19(b)(1)$ and $19(b)(2)$ proposed rule |
| 10 | changes related to margin, except for changes |
| 11 | resulting in higher margin levels; and |
| 12 | "(C) the association shall file pursuant to |
| 13 | section $19(b)(1)$ proposed rule changes that |
| 14 | have been abrogated by the Commission pursu- |
| 15 | ant to section $19(b)(7)(C)$. |
| 16 | "(4) OTHER EXEMPTIONS.—Such a securities |
| 17 | association shall be exempt from and shall not be re- |
| 18 | quired to enforce compliance by its members, and its |
| 19 | members shall not, solely with respect to their trans- |
| 20 | actions effected in security futures products, be re- |
| 21 | quired to comply, with the following provisions of |
| 22 | this title and the rules thereunder: |
| 23 | "(A) Section 8. |
| | |

| 1 | "(B) Subsections (b)(1), (b)(3), (b)(4), |
|----|---|
| 2 | (b)(5), (b)(8), (b)(10), (b)(11), (b)(12), (b)(13), |
| 3 | (c), (d), (e), (f), (g), (h), and (i) of this section. |
| 4 | "(C) Subsections (d), (f), and (k) of sec- |
| 5 | tion 17. |
| 6 | "(D) Subsections (a), (f), and (h) of sec- |
| 7 | tion 19.". |
| 8 | (d) Exemption Under the Securities Investor |
| 9 | PROTECTION ACT OF 1970.— |
| 10 | (1) Section $16(14)$ of the Securities Investor |
| 11 | Protection Act of 1970 (15 U.S.C. $78lll(14)$) is |
| 12 | amended by inserting "or any security future as that |
| 13 | term is defined in section $3(a)(55)(A)$ of the Securi- |
| 14 | ties Exchange Act of 1934," after "certificate of de- |
| 15 | posit for a security,". |
| 16 | (2) Section 3(a)(2)(A) of the Securities Investor |
| 17 | Protection Act of 1970 (15 U.S.C. $78ccc(a)(2)(A)$) |
| 18 | is amended— |
| 19 | (A) in clause (i), by striking "and" after |
| 20 | the semicolon; |
| 21 | (B) in clause (ii), by striking the period |
| 22 | and inserting "; and"; and |
| 23 | (C) by adding at the end the following: |
| 24 | "(iii) persons who are registered as a |
| 25 | broker or dealer pursuant to section |
| | |

| | 104 |
|----|--|
| 1 | 15(b)(11)(A) of the Securities Exchange |
| 2 | Act of 1934.". |
| 3 | SEC. 204. SPECIAL PROVISIONS FOR INTERAGENCY CO- |
| 4 | OPERATION. |
| 5 | Section 17(b) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 |
| 6 | (15 U.S.C. 78q(b)) is amended— |
| 7 | (1) by striking "(b) All" and inserting the fol- |
| 8 | lowing: |
| 9 | "(b) Records Subject to Examination.— |
| 10 | "(1) PROCEDURES FOR COOPERATION WITH |
| 11 | OTHER AGENCIES.—All''; |
| 12 | (2) by striking "prior to conducting any such |
| 13 | examination of a registered clearing" and inserting |
| 14 | the following: "prior to conducting any such exam- |
| 15 | ination of a— |
| 16 | "(A) registered clearing"; |
| 17 | (3) by redesignating the last sentence as para- |
| 18 | graph (4)(C); |
| 19 | (4) by striking the period at the end of the first |
| 20 | sentence and inserting the following: "; or |
| 21 | "(B) broker or dealer registered pursuant |
| 22 | to section $15(b)(11)$, exchange registered pursu- |
| 23 | ant to section 6(g), or national securities asso- |
| 24 | ciation registered pursuant to section $15A(k)$ |
| 25 | gives notice to the Commodity Futures Trading |
| | |

| 1 | Commission of such proposed examination and |
|--|--|
| 2 | consults with the Commodity Futures Trading |
| 3 | Commission concerning the feasibility and de- |
| 4 | sirability of coordinating such examination with |
| 5 | examinations conducted by the Commodity Fu- |
| 6 | tures Trading Commission in order to avoid un- |
| 7 | necessary regulatory duplication or undue regu- |
| 8 | latory burdens for such broker or dealer or ex- |
| 9 | change."; |
| 10 | (5) by adding at the end the following new |
| 11 | paragraphs: |
| | |
| 12 | "(2) FURNISHING DATA AND REPORTS TO |
| 12 13 | "(2) FURNISHING DATA AND REPORTS TO CFTC.—The Commission shall notify the Commodity |
| | |
| 13 | CFTC.—The Commission shall notify the Commodity |
| 13 14 | CFTC.—The Commission shall notify the Commodity Futures Trading Commission of any examination |
| 13 14 15 | CFTC.—The Commission shall notify the Commodity Futures Trading Commission of any examination conducted of any broker or dealer registered pursu- |
| 13 14 15 16 | CFTC.—The Commission shall notify the Commodity Futures Trading Commission of any examination conducted of any broker or dealer registered pursu- ant to section 15(b)(11), exchange registered pursu- |
| 13 14 15 16 17 | CFTC.—The Commission shall notify the Commodity Futures Trading Commission of any examination conducted of any broker or dealer registered pursu- ant to section 15(b)(11), exchange registered pursu- ant to section 6(g), or national securities association |
| 13 14 15 16 17 18 | CFTC.—The Commission shall notify the Commodity Futures Trading Commission of any examination conducted of any broker or dealer registered pursu- ant to section 15(b)(11), exchange registered pursu- ant to section 6(g), or national securities association registered pursuant to section 15A(k) and, upon re- |
| 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 | CFTC.—The Commission shall notify the Commodity Futures Trading Commission of any examination conducted of any broker or dealer registered pursu- ant to section 15(b)(11), exchange registered pursu- ant to section 6(g), or national securities association registered pursuant to section 15A(k) and, upon re- quest, furnish to the Commodity Futures Trading |

23 "(3) USE OF CFTC REPORTS.—Prior to con24 ducting an examination under paragraph (1), the
25 Commission shall use the reports of examinations, if

| 1 | the information available therein is sufficient for the |
|----|---|
| 2 | purposes of the examination, of— |
| 3 | "(A) any broker or dealer registered pursu- |
| 4 | ant to section $15(b)(11)$; |
| 5 | "(B) exchange registered pursuant to sec- |
| 6 | tion $6(g)$; or |
| 7 | "(C) national securities association reg- |
| 8 | istered pursuant to section 15A(k); |
| 9 | that is made by the Commodity Futures Trading |
| 10 | Commission, a national securities association reg- |
| 11 | istered pursuant to section 15A(k), or an exchange |
| 12 | registered pursuant to section $6(g)$. |
| 13 | "(4) Rules of construction.— |
| 14 | "(A) Notwithstanding any other provision |
| 15 | of this subsection, the records of a broker or |
| 16 | dealer registered pursuant to section $15(b)(11)$, |
| 17 | an exchange registered pursuant to section |
| 18 | 6(g), or a national securities association reg- |
| 19 | istered pursuant to section $15A(k)$ described in |
| 20 | this subparagraph shall not be subject to rou- |
| 21 | tine periodic examinations by the Commission. |
| 22 | "(B) Any recordkeeping rules adopted |
| 23 | under this subsection for a broker or dealer reg- |
| 24 | istered pursuant to section $15(b)(11)$, an ex- |
| 25 | change registered pursuant to section 6(g), or a |
| | |

| 1 | national securities association registered pursu- |
|----------|---|
| 2 | ant to section 15A(k) shall be limited to records |
| 3 | with respect to persons, accounts, agreements, |
| 4 | contracts, and transactions involving security |
| 5 | futures products."; and |
| 6 | (6) in paragraph $(4)(C)$ (as redesignated by |
| 7 | paragraph (3) of this section), by striking "Nothing |
| 8 | in the proviso to the preceding sentence" and insert- |
| 9 | ing "Nothing in the proviso in paragraph (1)". |
| 10 | SEC. 205. MAINTENANCE OF MARKET INTEGRITY FOR SE- |
| 11 | CURITY FUTURES PRODUCTS. |
| 12 | (a) Addition of Security Futures Products to |
| 13 | Option-Specific Enforcement Provisions.— |
| 14 | (1) PROHIBITION AGAINST MANIPULATION.— |
| 15 | Section 9(b) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 |
| 16 | (15 U.S.C. 78i(b)) is amended— |
| 17 | (A) in paragraph (1)— |
| 18 | (i) by inserting "(A)" after "ac- |
| 19 | quires''; and |
| 20 | |
| • • | (ii) by striking "; or" and inserting "; |
| 21 | (ii) by striking "; or" and inserting ";or (B) any security futures product on the |
| 21 22 | |
| | or (B) any security futures product on the |
| 22 | or (B) any security futures product on the security; or"; |

| | 100 |
|----|---|
| 1 | (ii) by striking "; or" and inserting "; |
| 2 | or (B) such security futures product; or''; |
| 3 | and |
| 4 | (C) in paragraph (3)— |
| 5 | (i) by inserting "(A)" after "interest |
| 6 | in any"; and |
| 7 | (ii) by inserting "; or (B) such secu- |
| 8 | rity futures product" after "privilege". |
| 9 | (2) MANIPULATION IN OPTIONS AND OTHER |
| 10 | DERIVATIVE PRODUCTS.—Section 9(g) of the Securi- |
| 11 | ties Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78i(g)) is |
| 12 | amended— |
| 13 | (A) by inserting "(1)" after "(g)"; |
| 14 | (B) by inserting "other than a security fu- |
| 15 | tures product" after "future delivery"; and |
| 16 | (C) by adding at the end the following: |
| 17 | "(2) Notwithstanding the Commodity Exchange Act, |
| 18 | the Commission shall have the authority to regulate the |
| 19 | trading of any security futures product to the extent pro- |
| 20 | vided in the securities laws.". |
| 21 | (3) LIABILITY OF CONTROLLING PERSONS AND |
| 22 | ~ . |
| 22 | PERSONS WHO AID AND ABET VIOLATIONS.—Section |
| 22 | PERSONS WHO AID AND ABET VIOLATIONS.—Section 20(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 |

and inserting ", privilege, or security futures prod uct".

3 (4) LIABILITY TO CONTEMPORANEOUS TRADERS
4 FOR INSIDER TRADING.—Section 21A(a)(1) of the
5 Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78u6 1(a)(1)) is amended by striking "standardized op7 tions, the Commission—" and inserting "standard8 ized options or security futures products, the Com9 mission—".

10 (5) ENFORCEMENT CONSULTATION.—Section
11 21 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15)
12 U.S.C. 78u) is amended by adding at the end the
13 following:

14 "(i) INFORMATION TO CFTC.—The Commission 15 shall provide the Commodity Futures Trading Commission with notice of the commencement of any proceeding and 16 17 a copy of any order entered by the Commission against any broker or dealer registered pursuant to section 18 19 15(b)(11), any exchange registered pursuant to section 20 6(g), or any national securities association registered pur-21 suant to section 15A(k).".

22 SEC. 206. SPECIAL PROVISIONS FOR THE TRADING OF SE 23 CURITY FUTURES PRODUCTS.

24 (a) LISTING STANDARDS AND CONDITIONS FOR25 TRADING.—Section 6 of the Securities Exchange Act of

1 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78f) is amended by inserting after sub2 section (g), as added by section 202, the following:

"(h) TRADING IN SECURITY FUTURES PRODUCTS.—
"(1) TRADING ON EXCHANGE OR ASSOCIATION
REQUIRED.—It shall be unlawful for any person to
effect transactions in security futures products that
are not listed on a national securities exchange or a
national securities association registered pursuant to
section 15A(a).

10 "(2) LISTING STANDARDS REQUIRED.—Except 11 as otherwise provided in paragraph (7), a national 12 securities exchange or a national securities associa-13 tion registered pursuant to section 15A(a) may trade 14 only security futures products that (A) conform with 15 listing standards that such exchange or association files with the Commission under section 19(b) and 16 17 (B) the specified meet criteria in section 18 2(a)(1)(D)(i) of the Commodity Exchange Act.

19 "(3) REQUIREMENTS FOR LISTING STANDARDS
20 AND CONDITIONS FOR TRADING.—Such listing
21 standards shall—

"(A) except as otherwise provided in a
rule, regulation, or order issued pursuant to
paragraph (4), require that any security underlying the security future, including each compo-

nent security of a narrow-based security index, be registered pursuant to section 12 of this title;

4 "(B) require that if the security futures
5 product is not cash settled, the market on
6 which the security futures product is traded
7 have arrangements in place with a registered
8 clearing agency for the payment and delivery of
9 the securities underlying the security futures
10 product;

"(C) be no less restrictive than comparable
listing standards for options traded on a national securities exchange or national securities
association registered pursuant to section
15 15A(a) of this title;

"(D) except as otherwise provided in a
rule, regulation, or order issued pursuant to
paragraph (4), require that the security future
be based upon common stock and such other
equity securities as the Commission and the
Commodity Futures Trading Commission jointly determine appropriate;

23 "(E) require that the security futures
24 product is cleared by a clearing agency that has
25 in place provisions for linked and coordinated

1

2

| 1 | clearing with other clearing agencies that clear |
|----|---|
| 2 | security futures products, which permits the se- |
| 3 | curity futures product to be purchased on one |
| 4 | market and offset on another market that |
| 5 | trades such product; |
| 6 | "(F) require that only a broker or dealer |
| 7 | subject to suitability rules comparable to those |
| 8 | of a national securities association registered |
| 9 | pursuant to section $15A(a)$ effect transactions |
| 10 | in the security futures product; |
| 11 | "(G) require that the security futures |
| 12 | product be subject to the prohibition against |
| 13 | dual trading in section 4j of the Commodity Ex- |
| 14 | change Act (7 U.S.C. 6j) and the rules and reg- |
| 15 | ulations thereunder or the provisions of section |
| 16 | 11(a) of this title and the rules and regulations |
| 17 | thereunder, except to the extent otherwise per- |
| 18 | mitted under this title and the rules and regula- |
| 19 | tions thereunder; |
| 20 | "(H) require that trading in the security |
| 21 | futures product not be readily susceptible to |
| 22 | manipulation of the price of such security fu- |
| 23 | tures product, nor to causing or being used in |
| 24 | the manipulation of the price of any underlying |
| | |

| 1 | security, option on such security, or option on |
|----|---|
| 2 | a group or index including such securities; |
| 3 | "(I) require that procedures be in place for |
| 4 | coordinated surveillance among the market on |
| 5 | which the security futures product is traded, |
| 6 | any market on which any security underlying |
| 7 | the security futures product is traded, and |
| 8 | other markets on which any related security is |
| 9 | traded to detect manipulation and insider trad- |
| 10 | ing; |
| 11 | "(J) require that the market on which the |
| 12 | security futures product is traded has in place |
| 13 | audit trails necessary or appropriate to facili- |
| 14 | tate the coordinated surveillance required in |
| 15 | subparagraph (I); |
| 16 | "(K) require that the market on which the |
| 17 | security futures product is traded has in place |
| 18 | procedures to coordinate trading halts between |
| 19 | such market and any market on which any se- |
| 20 | curity underlying the security futures product is |
| 21 | traded and other markets on which any related |
| 22 | security is traded; and |
| 23 | "(L) require that the margin requirements |
| 24 | for a security futures product comply with the |
| 25 | regulations prescribed pursuant to section |

1 7(c)(2)(B), except that nothing in this subpara-2 graph shall be construed to prevent a national securities exchange or national securities asso-3 4 ciation from requiring higher margin levels for 5 a security futures product when it deems such 6 action to be necessary or appropriate. 7 "(4) AUTHORITY TO MODIFY CERTAIN LISTING 8 STANDARD REQUIREMENTS.— "(A) AUTHORITY TO MODIFY.—The Com-9 10 mission and the Commodity Futures Trading 11 Commission, by rule, regulation, or order, may 12 jointly modify the listing standard requirements 13 specified in subparagraph (A) or (D) of para-14 graph (3) to the extent such modification fos-15 ters the development of fair and orderly mar-16 kets in security futures products, is necessary 17 or appropriate in the public interest, and is con-18 sistent with the protection of investors. 19 "(B) AUTHORITY TO GRANT EXEMP-20 TIONS.—The Commission and the Commodity 21 Futures Trading Commission, by order, may 22 jointly exempt any person from compliance with

jointly exempt any person from compliance with
the listing standard requirement specified in
subparagraph (E) of paragraph (3) to the extent such exemption fosters the development of

fair and orderly markets in security futures products, is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, and is consistent with the protection of investors.

"(5) Requirements for other persons 5 6 TRADING SECURITY FUTURE PRODUCTS.—It shall be 7 unlawful for any person (other than a national secu-8 rities exchange or a national securities association 9 registered pursuant to section 15A(a)) to constitute, 10 maintain, or provide a marketplace or facilities for 11 bringing together purchasers and sellers of security 12 future products or to otherwise perform with respect 13 to security future products the functions commonly 14 performed by a stock exchange as that term is gen-15 erally understood, unless a national securities asso-16 ciation registered pursuant to section 15A(a) or a 17 national securities exchange of which such person is 18 a member—

"(A) has in place procedures for coordinated surveillance among such person, the market trading the securities underlying the security future products, and other markets trading
related securities to detect manipulation and insider trading;

1

2

3

"(B) has rules to require audit trails nec essary or appropriate to facilitate the coordi nated surveillance required in subparagraph
 (A); and

5 "(C) has rules to require such person to 6 coordinate trading halts with markets trading 7 the securities underlying the security future 8 products and other markets trading related se-9 curities.

10 "(6) Deferral of options on security fu-11 TURES TRADING.—No person shall offer to enter 12 into, enter into, or confirm the execution of any put, 13 call, straddle, option, or privilege on a security fu-14 ture, except that, after 3 years after the date of the 15 enactment of this subsection, the Commission and 16 the Commodity Futures Trading Commission may 17 by order jointly determine to permit trading of puts, 18 calls, straddles, options, or privileges on any security 19 future authorized to be traded under the provisions 20 of this Act and the Commodity Exchange Act.

21 "(7) DEFERRAL OF LINKED AND COORDINATED
22 CLEARING.—

23 "(A) Notwithstanding paragraph (2), until
24 the compliance date, a national securities ex25 change or national securities association reg-

| 1 | istered pursuant to section 15A(a) may trade a |
|----|---|
| 2 | security futures product that does not— |
| 3 | "(i) conform with any listing standard |
| 4 | promulgated to meet the requirement spec- |
| 5 | ified in subparagraph (E) of paragraph |
| 6 | (3); or |
| 7 | "(ii) meet the criterion specified in |
| 8 | section $2(a)(1)(D)(i)(IV)$ of the Com- |
| 9 | modity Exchange Act. |
| 10 | "(B) The Commission and the Commodity |
| 11 | Futures Trading Commission shall jointly pub- |
| 12 | lish in the Federal Register a notice of the com- |
| 13 | pliance date no later than 165 days before the |
| 14 | compliance date. |
| 15 | "(C) For purposes of this paragraph, the |
| 16 | term 'compliance date' means the later of— |
| 17 | "(i) 180 days after the end of the |
| 18 | first full calendar month period in which |
| 19 | the average aggregate comparable share |
| 20 | volume for all security futures products |
| 21 | based on single equity securities traded on |
| 22 | all national securities exchanges, any na- |
| 23 | tional securities associations registered |
| | |

pursuant to section 15A(a), and all other persons equals or exceeds 10 percent of the

| 1 | average aggregate comparable share vol- |
|----|--|
| 2 | ume of options on single equity securities |
| 3 | traded on all national securities exchanges |
| 4 | and any national securities associations |
| 5 | registered pursuant to section 15A(a); or |
| 6 | "(ii) 2 years after the date on which |
| 7 | trading in any security futures product |
| 8 | commences under this title.". |
| 9 | (b) MARGIN.—Section 7 of the Securities Exchange |
| 10 | Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78g) is amended— |
| 11 | (1) in subsection (a), by inserting "or a security |
| 12 | futures product" after "exempted security"; |
| 13 | (2) in subsection $(c)(1)(A)$, by inserting "except |
| 14 | as provided in paragraph (2)," after "security),"; |
| 15 | (3) by redesignating paragraph (2) of sub- |
| 16 | section (c) as paragraph (3) of such subsection; and |
| 17 | (4) by inserting after paragraph (1) of such |
| 18 | subsection the following: |
| 19 | "(2) MARGIN REGULATIONS.— |
| 20 | "(A) COMPLIANCE WITH MARGIN RULES |
| 21 | REQUIRED.—It shall be unlawful for any |
| 22 | broker, dealer, or member of a national securi- |
| 23 | ties exchange to, directly or indirectly, extend |
| 24 | or maintain credit to or for, or collect margin |
| 25 | from any customer on, any security futures |

| 1 | product unless such activities comply with the |
|----|---|
| 2 | regulations— |
| 3 | "(i) which the Board shall prescribe |
| 4 | pursuant to subparagraph (B); or |
| 5 | "(ii) if the Board determines to dele- |
| 6 | gate the authority to prescribe such regula- |
| 7 | tions, which the Commission and the Com- |
| 8 | modity Futures Trading Commission shall |
| 9 | jointly prescribe pursuant to subparagraph |
| 10 | (B). |
| 11 | If the Board delegates the authority to pre- |
| 12 | scribe such regulations under clause (ii) and the |
| 13 | Commission and the Commodity Futures Trad- |
| 14 | ing Commission have not jointly prescribed such |
| 15 | regulations within a reasonable period of time |
| 16 | after the date of such delegation, the Board |
| 17 | shall prescribe such regulations pursuant to |
| 18 | subparagraph (B). |
| 19 | "(B) CRITERIA FOR ISSUANCE OF |
| 20 | RULES.—The Board shall prescribe, or, if the |
| 21 | authority is delegated pursuant to subpara- |
| 22 | graph (A)(ii), the Commission and the Com- |
| 23 | modity Futures Trading Commission shall |
| 24 | jointly prescribe, such regulations to establish |
| 25 | margin requirements, including the establish- |

| 1 | ment of levels of margin (initial and mainte- |
|----|---|
| 2 | nance) for security futures products under such |
| 3 | terms, and at such levels, as the Board deems |
| 4 | appropriate, or as the Commission and the |
| 5 | Commodity Futures Trading Commission joint- |
| 6 | ly deem appropriate— |
| 7 | "(i) to preserve the financial integrity |
| 8 | of markets trading security futures prod- |
| 9 | ucts; |
| 10 | "(ii) to prevent systemic risk; |
| 11 | "(iii) to require that— |
| 12 | "(I) the margin requirements for |
| 13 | a security future product be con- |
| 14 | sistent with the margin requirements |
| 15 | for comparable option contracts trad- |
| 16 | ed on any exchange registered pursu- |
| 17 | ant to section $6(a)$ of this title; and |
| 18 | "(II) initial and maintenance |
| 19 | margin levels for a security future |
| 20 | product not be lower than the lowest |
| 21 | level of margin, exclusive of premium, |
| 22 | required for any comparable option |
| 23 | contract traded on any exchange reg- |
| 24 | istered pursuant to section 6(a) of |

1 this title, other than an option on a 2 security future; except that nothing in this subparagraph 3 4 shall be construed to prevent a national securities exchange or national securities as-5 sociation from requiring higher margin lev-6 7 els for a security future product when it 8 deems such action to be necessary or ap-9 propriate; and "(iv) to ensure that the margin re-10 11 quirements (other than levels of margin), 12 including the type, form, and use of collat-13 eral for security futures products, are and 14 remain consistent with the requirements 15 established by the Board, pursuant to subparagraphs (A) and (B) of paragraph 16 17 (1).". 18 (c) INCORPORATION OF SECURITY FUTURES PROD-

10 (c) INCORTORATION OF SECONTLY FOTORES FROM19 UCTS INTO THE NATIONAL MARKET SYSTEM.—Section
20 11A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C.
21 78k-1) is amended by adding at the end the following:
22 "(e) NATIONAL MARKETS SYSTEM FOR SECURITY
23 FUTURES PRODUCTS.—

24 "(1) CONSULTATION AND COOPERATION RE25 QUIRED.—With respect to security futures products,

1 the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trad-2 ing Commission shall consult and cooperate so that, 3 to the maximum extent practicable, their respective 4 regulatory responsibilities may be fulfilled and the 5 rules and regulations applicable to security futures 6 products may foster a national market system for 7 security futures products if the Commission and the 8 Commodity Futures Trading Commission jointly de-9 termine that such a system would be consistent with 10 the congressional findings in subsection (a)(1). In 11 accordance with this objective, the Commission shall, 12 at least 15 days prior to the issuance for public com-13 ment of any proposed rule or regulation under this 14 section concerning security futures products, consult 15 and request the views of the Commodity Futures 16 Trading Commission.

17 "(2) Application of rules by order of 18 CFTC.—No rule adopted pursuant to this section 19 shall be applied to any person with respect to the 20 trading of security futures products on an exchange 21 that is registered under section 6(g) unless the Com-22 modity Futures Trading Commission has issued an 23 order directing that such rule is applicable to such 24 persons.".

(d) INCORPORATION OF SECURITY FUTURES PROD UCTS INTO THE NATIONAL SYSTEM FOR CLEARANCE AND
 SETTLEMENT.—Section 17A(b) of the Securities Ex change Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78q-1(b)) is amended by
 adding at the end the following:

6 ((7)(A) A clearing agency that is regulated directly 7 or indirectly by the Commodity Futures Trading Commis-8 sion through its association with a designated contract 9 market for security futures products that is a national se-10 curities exchange registered pursuant to section 6(g), and that would be required to register pursuant to paragraph 11 12 (1) of this subsection only because it performs the func-13 tions of a clearing agency with respect to security futures products effected pursuant to the rules of the designated 14 15 contract market with which such agency is associated, is exempted from the provisions of this section and the rules 16 17 and regulations thereunder, except that if such a clearing 18 agency performs the functions of a clearing agency with 19 respect to a security futures product that is not cash set-20 tled, it must have arrangements in place with a registered 21 clearing agency to effect the payment and delivery of the 22 securities underlying the security futures product.

"(B) Any clearing agency that performs the functions
of a clearing agency with respect to security futures products must coordinate with and develop fair and reasonable

links with any and all other clearing agencies that perform
 the functions of a clearing agency with respect to security
 futures products, in order to permit, as of the compliance
 date (as defined in section 6(h)(6)(C)), security futures
 products to be purchased on one market and offset on an other market that trades such products.".

7 (e) MARKET EMERGENCY POWERS AND CIRCUIT
8 BREAKERS.—Section 12(k) of the Securities Exchange
9 Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78l(k)) is amended—

(1) in paragraph (1), by adding at the end the
following: "If the actions described in subparagraph
(A) or (B) involve a security futures product, the
Commission shall consult with and consider the
views of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission."; and

(2) in paragraph (2)(B), by inserting after the
first sentence the following: "If the actions described
in subparagraph (A) involve a security futures product, the Commission shall consult with and consider
the views of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission.".

(f) TRANSACTION FEES.—Section 31 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78ee) is amended—
(1) in subsection (a), by inserting "and assessments" after "fees";

| 1 | (2) in subsections (b) , (c) , and $(d)(1)$, by strik- |
|----|---|
| 2 | ing "and other evidences of indebtedness" and in- |
| 3 | serting "other evidences of indebtedness, and secu- |
| 4 | rity futures products''; |
| 5 | (3) in subsection (f), by inserting "or assess- |
| 6 | ment" after "fee"; |
| 7 | (4) in subsection (g), by inserting "and assess- |
| 8 | ment" after "fee"; |
| 9 | (5) by redesignating subsections (e), (f), and |
| 10 | (g) as subsections (f), (g), and (h), respectively; and |
| 11 | (6) by inserting after subsection (d) the fol- |
| 12 | lowing new subsection: |
| 13 | "(e) Assessments on Security Futures Trans- |
| 14 | ACTIONS.—Each national securities exchange and national |
| 15 | securities association shall pay to the Commission an as- |
| 16 | sessment equal to 0.02 for each round turn transaction |
| 17 | (treated as including one purchase and one sale of a con- |
| 18 | tract of sale for future delivery) on a security future trad- |
| 19 | ed on such national securities exchange or by or through |
| 20 | any member of such association otherwise than on a na- |
| 21 | tional securities exchange, except that for fiscal year 2007 |
| 22 | or any succeeding fiscal year such assessment shall be |
| 23 | equal to 0.0075 for each such transaction. Assessments |
| 24 | collected pursuant to this subsection shall be deposited |
| 25 | and collected as general revenue of the Treasury.". |

1 (g) EXEMPTION FROM SHORT SALE PROVISIONS.— 2 Section 10(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15) 3 U.S.C 78j(a) is amended— (1) by inserting "(1)" after "(a)"; and 4 5 (2) by adding at the end the following: 6 "(2) Paragraph (1) of this subsection shall not apply 7 to security futures products.". 8 (h) RULEMAKING AUTHORITY TO ADDRESS DUPLI-9 CATIVE REGULATION OF DUAL REGISTRANTS.—Section 10 15(c)(3) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15) U.S.C. 78o(c)(3) is amended— 11

12 (1) by inserting "(A)" after "(3)"; and

(2) by adding at the end the following:

14 "(B) Consistent with this title, the Commission, in 15 consultation with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission, shall issue such rules, regulations, or orders as 16 17 are necessary to avoid duplicative or conflicting regulations applicable to any broker or dealer registered with 18 19 the Commission pursuant to section 15(b) (except para-20graph (11) thereof), that is also registered with the Com-21 modity Futures Trading Commission pursuant to section 22 4f(a) of the Commodity Exchange Act (except paragraph 23 (2) thereof), with respect to the application of: (i) the pro-24 visions of section 8, section 15(c)(3), and section 17 of 25 this title and the rules and regulations thereunder related

13

1 to the treatment of customer funds, securities, or prop2 erty, maintenance of books and records, financial report3 ing, or other financial responsibility rules, involving secu4 rity futures products; and (ii) similar provisions of the
5 Commodity Exchange Act and rules and regulations there6 under involving security futures products.".

7 (i) OBLIGATION TO ADDRESS DUPLICATIVE REGU8 LATION OF DUAL REGISTRANTS.—Section 6 of the Securi9 ties Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78f) is amended
10 by inserting after subsection (h), as added by subsection
11 (a) of this section, the following:

12 "(i) Consistent with this title, each national securities 13 exchange registered pursuant to subsection (a) of this section shall issue such rules as are necessary to avoid dupli-14 15 cative or conflicting rules applicable to any broker or dealer registered with the Commission pursuant to section 16 17 15(b) (except paragraph (11) thereof), that is also registered with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission 18 19 pursuant to section 4f(a) of the Commodity Exchange Act (except paragraph (2) thereof), with respect to the appli-20 21 cation of-

(1) rules of such national securities exchange of
the type specified in section 15(c)(3)(B) involving
security futures products; and

(2) similar rules of national securities ex-1 2 changes registered pursuant to section 6(g) and national securities associations registered pursuant to 3 4 section 15A(k) involving security futures products.". 5 (j) Obligation To Address Duplicative Regu-LATION OF DUAL REGISTRANTS.—Section 15A of the Se-6 7 curities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 780-3) is 8 amended by inserting after subsection (k), as added by 9 section 203, the following:

10 "(1) Consistent with this title, each national securities 11 association registered pursuant to subsection (a) of this section shall issue such rules as are necessary to avoid du-12 13 plicative or conflicting rules applicable to any broker or dealer registered with the Commission pursuant to section 14 15 15(b) (except paragraph (11) thereof), that is also registered with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission 16 pursuant to section 4f(a) of the Commodity Exchange Act 17 18 (except paragraph (2) thereof), with respect to the appli-19 cation of—

20 "(1) rules of such national securities association
21 of the type specified in section 15(c)(3)(B) involving
22 security futures products; and

23 "(2) similar rules of national securities associa24 tions registered pursuant to subsection (k) of this
25 section and national securities exchanges registered

pursuant to section 6(g) involving security futures
 products.".

3 (k) Obligation To Put in Place Procedures4 AND Adopt Rules.—

5 (1) NATIONAL SECURITIES ASSOCIATIONS.—
6 Section 15A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934
7 (15 U.S.C. 780–3) is amended by inserting after
8 subsection (1), as added by subsection (j) of this sec9 tion, the following new subsection:

10 "(m) PROCEDURES AND RULES FOR SECURITY FU-TURE PRODUCTS.—A national securities association reg-11 istered pursuant to subsection (a) shall, not later than 8 12 13 months after the date of the enactment of the Commodity Futures Modernization Act of 2000, implement the proce-14 15 dures specified in section 6(h)(5)(A) of this title and adopt the rules specified in subparagraphs (B) and (C) of section 16 17 6(h)(5) of this title.".

18 (2) NATIONAL SECURITIES EXCHANGES.—Sec19 tion 6 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15
20 U.S.C. 78f) is amended by inserting after subsection
21 (i), as added by subsection (i) of this section, the fol22 lowing new subsection:

23 "(j) PROCEDURES AND RULES FOR SECURITY FU24 TURE PRODUCTS.—A national securities exchange reg25 istered pursuant to subsection (a) shall implement the pro-

cedures specified in section 6(h)(5)(A) of this title and
 adopt the rules specified in subparagraphs (B) and (C)
 of section 6(h)(5) of this title not later than 8 months
 after the date of receipt of a request from an alternative
 trading system for such implementation and rules.".

6 (1) OBLIGATION TO ADDRESS SECURITY FUTURES
7 PRODUCTS TRADED ON FOREIGN EXCHANGES.—Section
8 6 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78f)
9 is amended by adding after subsection (j), as added by
10 subsection (k) of this section, the following:

11 (k)(1) To the extent necessary or appropriate in the 12 public interest, to promote fair competition, and consistent 13 with the promotion of market efficiency, innovation, and expansion of investment opportunities, the protection of 14 15 investors, and the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, the Commission and the Commodity Futures Trad-16 ing Commission shall jointly issue such rules, regulations, 17 or orders as are necessary and appropriate to permit the 18 19 offer and sale of a security futures product traded on or 20subject to the rules of a foreign board of trade to United 21 States persons.

"(2) The rules, regulations, or orders adopted under
paragraph (1) shall take into account, as appropriate, the
nature and size of the markets that the securities underlying the security futures product reflect.".

191

1 SEC. 207. CLEARANCE AND SETTLEMENT.

2 Section 17A(b) of the Securities Exchange Act of
3 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78q-1(b)) is amended—

4 (1) in paragraph (3)(A), by inserting "and de5 rivative agreements, contracts, and transactions"
6 after "prompt and accurate clearance and settlement
7 of securities transactions";

8 (2) in paragraph (3)(F), by inserting "and, to 9 the extent applicable, derivative agreements, con-10 tracts, and transactions" after "designed to promote 11 the prompt and accurate clearance and settlement of 12 securities transactions"; and

13 (3) by inserting after paragraph (7), as added14 by section 206(d), the following:

15 "(8) A registered clearing agency shall be permitted to provide facilities for the clearance and settlement of any 16 17 derivative agreements, contracts, or transactions that are 18 excluded from the Commodity Exchange Act, subject to 19 the requirements of this section and to such rules and reg-20 ulations as the Commission may prescribe as necessary or 21 appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of in-22 vestors, or otherwise in furtherance of the purposes of this 23 title.".

| 1 | SEC. 208. AMENDMENTS RELATING TO REGISTRATION AND |
|----|---|
| 2 | DISCLOSURE ISSUES UNDER THE SECURI- |
| 3 | TIES ACT OF 1933 AND THE SECURITIES EX- |
| 4 | CHANGE ACT OF 1934. |
| 5 | (a) Amendments to the Securities Act of |
| 6 | 1933.— |
| 7 | (1) TREATMENT OF SECURITY FUTURES PROD- |
| 8 | UCTS.—Section 2(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 |
| 9 | (15 U.S.C. 77b(a)) is amended— |
| 10 | (A) in paragraph (1), by inserting "secu- |
| 11 | rity future," after "treasury stock,"; |
| 12 | (B) in paragraph (3), by adding at the end |
| 13 | the following: "Any offer or sale of a security |
| 14 | futures product by or on behalf of the issuer of |
| 15 | the securities underlying the security futures |
| 16 | product, an affiliate of the issuer, or an under- |
| 17 | writer, shall constitute a contract for sale of, |
| 18 | sale of, offer for sale, or offer to sell the under- |
| 19 | lying securities."; and |
| 20 | (C) by adding at the end the following: |
| 21 | "(16) The terms 'security future', 'narrow- |
| 22 | based security index', and 'security futures product' |
| 23 | have the same meanings as provided in section |
| 24 | 3(a)(55) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.". |
| 25 | (2) EXEMPTION FROM REGISTRATION.—Section |
| 26 | 3(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. |
| | •HR 5660 IH |

| 1 | 77c(a)) is amended by adding at the end the fol- |
|----|---|
| 2 | lowing: |
| 3 | "(14) Any security futures product that is— |
| 4 | "(A) cleared by a clearing agency reg- |
| 5 | istered under section 17A of the Securities Ex- |
| 6 | change Act of 1934 or exempt from registration |
| 7 | under subsection $(b)(7)$ of such section 17A; |
| 8 | and |
| 9 | "(B) traded on a national securities ex- |
| 10 | change or a national securities association reg- |
| 11 | istered pursuant to section 15A(a) of the Secu- |
| 12 | rities Exchange Act of 1934.". |
| 13 | (3) Conforming Amendment.—Section |
| 14 | 12(a)(2) of the Securities Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. |
| 15 | 77l(a)(2)) is amended by striking "paragraph (2)" |
| 16 | and inserting "paragraphs (2) and (14)". |
| 17 | (b) Amendments to the Securities Exchange |
| 18 | Аст оf 1934.— |
| 19 | (1) EXEMPTION FROM REGISTRATION.—Section |
| 20 | 12(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15) |
| 21 | U.S.C. 781(a)) is amended by adding at the end the |
| 22 | following: "The provisions of this subsection shall |
| 23 | not apply in respect of a security futures product |
| 24 | traded on a national securities exchange.". |

| 1 | (2) EXEMPTIONS FROM REPORTING REQUIRE- |
|----|--|
| 2 | MENT.—Section 12(g)(5) of the Securities Exchange |
| 3 | Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. $78l(g)(5)$) is amended by |
| 4 | adding at the end the following: "For purposes of |
| 5 | this subsection, a security futures product shall not |
| 6 | be considered a class of equity security of the issuer |
| 7 | of the securities underlying the security futures |
| 8 | product.". |
| 9 | (3) TRANSACTIONS BY CORPORATE INSIDERS.— |
| 10 | Section 16 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 |
| 11 | (15 U.S.C. 78p) is amended by adding at the end |
| 12 | the following: |
| 13 | "(f) TREATMENT OF TRANSACTIONS IN SECURITY |
| 14 | FUTURES PRODUCTS.—The provisions of this section |
| 15 | shall apply to ownership of and transactions in security |
| 16 | futures products.". |
| 17 | SEC. 209. AMENDMENTS TO THE INVESTMENT COMPANY |
| 18 | ACT OF 1940 AND THE INVESTMENT ADVIS- |
| 19 | ERS ACT OF 1940. |
| 20 | (a) Definitions Under the Investment Com- |
| 21 | PANY ACT OF 1940 AND THE INVESTMENT ADVISERS ACT |
| 22 | of 1940.— |
| 23 | (1) Section $2(a)(36)$ of the Investment Com- |
| 24 | pany Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80a–2(a)(36)) is |

| 1 | |
|----|---|
| 1 | amended by inserting "security future," after |
| 2 | "treasury stock,". |
| 3 | (2) Section $202(a)(18)$ of the Investment Advis- |
| 4 | ers Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80b–2(a)(18)) is amend- |
| 5 | ed by inserting "security future," after "treasury |
| 6 | stock,". |
| 7 | (3) Section 2(a) of the Investment Company |
| 8 | Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80a-2(a)) is amended by |
| 9 | adding at the end the following: |
| 10 | "(52) The terms 'security future' and 'narrow- |
| 11 | based security index' have the same meanings as |
| 12 | provided in section 3(a)(55) of the Securities Ex- |
| 13 | change Act of 1934.". |
| 14 | (4) Section 202(a) of the Investment Advisers |
| 15 | Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. $80b-2(a)$) is amended by |
| 16 | adding at the end the following: |
| 17 | "(27) The terms 'security future' and 'narrow- |
| 18 | based security index' have the same meanings as |
| 19 | provided in section 3(a)(55) of the Securities Ex- |
| 20 | change Act of 1934.". |
| 21 | (b) OTHER PROVISION.—Section 203(b) of the In- |
| 22 | vestment Advisers Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. 80b–3(b)) is |
| 23 | amended— |
| 24 | (1) by striking "or" at the end of paragraph |
| 25 | (4); |
| | |

| 1 | (2) by striking the period at the end of para- |
|----|--|
| 2 | graph (5) and inserting "; or"; and |
| 3 | (3) by adding at the end the following: |
| 4 | "(6) any investment adviser that is registered |
| 5 | with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission |
| 6 | as a commodity trading advisor whose business does |
| 7 | not consist primarily of acting as an investment ad- |
| 8 | viser, as defined in section $202(a)(11)$ of this title, |
| 9 | and that does not act as an investment adviser to— |
| 10 | "(A) an investment company registered |
| 11 | under title I of this Act; or |
| 12 | "(B) a company which has elected to be a |
| 13 | business development company pursuant to sec- |
| 14 | tion 54 of title I of this Act and has not with- |
| 15 | drawn its election.". |
| 16 | SEC. 210. PREEMPTION OF STATE LAWS. |
| 17 | Section 28(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 |
| 18 | (15 U.S.C. 78bb(a)) is amended— |
| 19 | (1) in the last sentence— |
| 20 | (A) by inserting "subject to this title" |
| 21 | after "privilege, or other security"; and |
| 22 | (B) by striking "any such instrument, if |
| 23 | such instrument is traded pursuant to rules and |
| 24 | regulations of a self-regulatory organization |
| 25 | that are filed with the Commission pursuant to |

| | 197 |
|----|---|
| 1 | section 19(b) of this Act" and inserting "any |
| 2 | such security"; and |
| 3 | (2) by adding at the end the following new sen- |
| 4 | tence: "No provision of State law regarding the |
| 5 | offer, sale, or distribution of securities shall apply to |
| 6 | any transaction in a security futures product, except |
| 7 | that this sentence shall not be construed as limiting |
| 8 | any State antifraud law of general applicability.". |
| 9 | Subtitle B—Amendments to the |
| 10 | Commodity Exchange Act |
| 11 | SEC. 251. JURISDICTION OF SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE |
| 12 | COMMISSION; OTHER PROVISIONS. |
| 13 | (a) Jurisdiction of Securities and Exchange |
| 14 | Commission.— |
| 15 | (1) Section $2(a)(1)(C)$ of the Commodity Ex- |
| 16 | change Act (7 U.S.C. 2a) (as redesignated by sec- |
| 17 | tion $34(a)(2)(C)$) is amended— |
| 18 | (A) in clause (ii)— |
| 19 | (i) by inserting "or register a deriva- |
| 20 | tives transaction execution facility that |
| 21 | trades or executes," after "contract market |
| 22 | in,"; |
| 23 | (ii) by inserting after "contracts) for |
| 24 | future delivery" the following: ", and no |
| 25 | derivatives transaction execution facility |
| | |

| | 200 |
|----|--|
| 1 | shall trade or execute such contracts of |
| 2 | sale (or options on such contracts) for fu- |
| 3 | ture delivery,"; |
| 4 | (iii) by striking "making such applica- |
| 5 | tion demonstrates and the Commission ex- |
| 6 | pressly finds that the specific contract (or |
| 7 | option on such contract) with respect to |
| 8 | which the application has been made |
| 9 | meets" and inserting "or the derivatives |
| 10 | transaction execution facility, and the ap- |
| 11 | plicable contract, meet"; and |
| 12 | (iv) by striking subclause (III) of |
| 13 | clause (ii) and inserting the following: |
| 14 | "(III) Such group or index of securities |
| 15 | shall not constitute a narrow-based security |
| 16 | index."; |
| 17 | (B) by striking clause (iii); |
| 18 | (C) by striking clause (iv) and inserting |
| 19 | the following: |
| 20 | "(iii) If, in its discretion, the Commission deter- |
| 21 | mines that a stock index futures contract, notwith- |
| 22 | standing its conformance with the requirements in |
| 23 | clause (ii) of this subparagraph, can reasonably be |
| 24 | used as a surrogate for trading a security (including |
| 25 | a security futures product), it may, by order, require |
| | |

| 1 | such contract and any option thereon be traded and |
|----|---|
| 2 | regulated as security futures products as defined in |
| 3 | section $3(a)(56)$ of the Securities Exchange Act of |
| 4 | 1934 and section 1a of this Act subject to all rules |
| 5 | and regulations applicable to security futures prod- |
| 6 | ucts under this Act and the securities laws as de- |
| 7 | fined in section $3(a)(47)$ of the Securities Exchange |
| 8 | Act of 1934."; and |
| 9 | (D) by redesignating clause (v) as clause |
| 10 | (iv). |
| 11 | (2) Section $2(a)(1)$ of the Commodity Exchange |
| 12 | Act (7 U.S.C. 2, 2a, 4) is amended by adding at the |
| 13 | end the following: |
| 14 | "(D)(i) Notwithstanding any other provision of this |
| 15 | Act, the Securities and Exchange Commission shall have |
| 16 | jurisdiction and authority over security futures as defined |
| 17 | in section $3(a)(55)$ of the Securities Exchange Act of |
| 18 | 1934, section 2(a)(16) of the Securities Act of 1933, sec- |
| 19 | tion 2(a)(52) of the Investment Company Act of 1940, |
| 20 | and section $202(a)(27)$ of the Investment Advisers Act of |
| 21 | 1940, options on security futures, and persons effecting |
| 22 | transactions in security futures and options thereon, and |
| 23 | this Act shall apply to and the Commission shall have ju- |
| 24 | risdiction with respect to accounts, agreements (including |
| 25 | any transaction which is of the character of, or is com- |

monly known to the trade as, an 'option', 'privilege', 'in-1 2 demnity', 'bid', 'offer', 'put', 'call', 'advance guaranty', or 3 'decline guaranty'), contracts, and transactions involving, 4 and may designate a board of trade as a contract market 5 in, or register a derivatives transaction execution facility that trades or executes, a security futures product as de-6 7 fined in section 1a of this Act: Provided, however, That, 8 except as provided in clause (vi) of this subparagraph, no 9 board of trade shall be designated as a contract market 10 with respect to, or registered as a derivative transaction 11 execution facility for, any such contracts of sale for future delivery unless the board of trade and the applicable con-12 13 tract meet the following criteria:

14 "(I) Except as otherwise provided in a rule, 15 regulation, or order issued pursuant to clause (v) of 16 this subparagraph, any security underlying the secu-17 rity future, including each component security of a 18 narrow-based security index, is registered pursuant 19 to section 12 of the Securities Exchange Act of 20 1934.

"(II) If the security futures product is not cash
settled, the board of trade on which the security futures product is traded has arrangements in place
with a clearing agency registered pursuant to section
17A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 for the

payment and delivery of the securities underlying the
 security futures product.

"(III) Except as otherwise provided in a rule,
regulation, or order issued pursuant to clause (v) of
this subparagraph, the security future is based upon
common stock and such other equity securities as
the Commission and the Securities and Exchange
Commission jointly determine appropriate.

9 "(IV) The security futures product is cleared by 10 a clearing agency that has in place provisions for 11 linked and coordinated clearing with other clearing 12 agencies that clear security futures products, which 13 permits the security futures product to be purchased 14 on a designated contract market, registered deriva-15 tives transaction execution facility, national securi-16 ties exchange registered under section 6(a) of the 17 Securities Exchange Act of 1934, or national securi-18 association registered pursuant to section ties 19 15A(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and 20 offset on another designated contract market, reg-21 istered derivatives transaction execution facility, na-22 tional securities exchange registered under section 23 6(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, or na-24 tional securities association registered pursuant to

section 15A(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of
 1934.

3 "(V) Only futures commission merchants, intro-4 ducing brokers, commodity trading advisors, com-5 modity pool operators or associated persons subject 6 to suitability rules comparable to those of a national securities association registered pursuant to section 7 8 15A(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 so-9 licit, accept any order for, or otherwise deal in any 10 transaction in or in connection with the security fu-11 tures product.

12 "(VI) The security futures product is subject to 13 a prohibition against dual trading in section 4j of 14 this Act and the rules and regulations thereunder or 15 the provisions of section 11(a) of the Securities Ex-16 change Act of 1934 and the rules and regulations 17 thereunder, except to the extent otherwise permitted 18 under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and the 19 rules and regulations thereunder.

"(VII) Trading in the security futures product
is not readily susceptible to manipulation of the
price of such security futures product, nor to causing or being used in the manipulation of the price
of any underlying security, option on such security,

or option on a group or index including such securi ties;

"(VIII) The board of trade on which the secu-3 4 rity futures product is traded has procedures in 5 place for coordinated surveillance among such board 6 of trade, any market on which any security under-7 lying the security futures product is traded, and 8 other markets on which any related security is trad-9 ed to detect manipulation and insider trading, except 10 that, if the board of trade is an alternative trading 11 system, a national securities association registered 12 pursuant to section 15A(a) of the Securities Ex-13 change Act of 1934 or national securities exchange 14 registered pursuant to section 6(a) of the Securities 15 Exchange Act of 1934 of which such alternative 16 trading system is a member has in place such proce-17 dures.

18 "(IX) The board of trade on which the security 19 futures product is traded has in place audit trails 20 necessary or appropriate to facilitate the coordinated 21 surveillance required in subclause (VIII), except 22 that, if the board of trade is an alternative trading 23 system, a national securities association registered 24 pursuant to section 15A(a) of the Securities Ex-25 change Act of 1934 or national securities exchange registered pursuant to section 6(a) of the Securities
 Exchange Act of 1934 of which such alternative
 trading system is a member has rules to require
 such audit trails.

"(X) The board of trade on which the security 5 6 futures product is traded has in place procedures to coordinate trading halts between such board of trade 7 and markets on which any security underlying the 8 9 security futures product is traded and other markets 10 on which any related security is traded, except that, 11 if the board of trade is an alternative trading sys-12 tem, a national securities association registered pur-13 suant to section 15A(a) of the Securities Exchange 14 Act of 1934 or national securities exchange reg-15 istered pursuant to section 6(a) of the Securities Ex-16 change Act of 1934 of which such alternative trad-17 ing system is a member has rules to require such co-18 ordinated trading halts.

"(XI) The margin requirements for a security
futures product comply with the regulations prescribed pursuant to section 7(c)(2)(B) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, except that nothing in
this subclause shall be construed to prevent a board
of trade from requiring higher margin levels for a

| 1 | security futures product when it deems such action |
|----|--|
| 2 | to be necessary or appropriate. |
| 3 | "(ii) It shall be unlawful for any person to offer, to |
| 4 | enter into, to execute, to confirm the execution of, or to |
| 5 | conduct any office or business anywhere in the United |
| 6 | States, its territories or possessions, for the purpose of |
| 7 | soliciting, or accepting any order for, or otherwise dealing |
| 8 | in, any transaction in, or in connection with, a security |
| 9 | futures product unless— |
| 10 | "(I) the transaction is conducted on or subject |
| 11 | to the rules of a board of trade that— |
| 12 | "(aa) has been designated by the Commis- |
| 13 | sion as a contract market in such security fu- |
| 14 | tures product; or |
| 15 | "(bb) is a registered derivatives trans- |
| 16 | action execution facility for the security futures |
| 17 | product that has provided a certification with |
| 18 | respect to the security futures product pursuant |
| 19 | to clause (vii); |
| 20 | "(II) the contract is executed or consummated |
| 21 | by, through, or with a member of the contract mar- |
| 22 | ket or registered derivatives transaction execution |
| 23 | facility; and |
| 24 | "(III) the security futures product is evidenced |
| 25 | by a record in writing which shows the date, the |

1 parties to such security futures product and their 2 addresses, the property covered, and its price, and each contract market member or registered deriva-3 4 tives transaction execution facility member shall 5 keep the record for a period of 3 years from the date 6 of the transaction, or for a longer period if the Com-7 mission so directs, which record shall at all times be 8 open to the inspection of any duly authorized rep-9 resentative of the Commission.

"(iii)(I) Except as provided in subclause (II) but notwithstanding any other provision of this Act, no person
shall offer to enter into, enter into, or confirm the execution of any option on a security future.

14 "(II) After 3 years after the date of the enactment 15 of the Commodity Futures Modernization Act of 2000, the 16 Commission and the Securities and Exchange Commission 17 may by order jointly determine to permit trading of op-18 tions on any security future authorized to be traded under 19 the provisions of this Act and the Securities Exchange Act 20 of 1934.

21 "(iv)(I) All relevant records of a futures commission 22 merchant or introducing broker registered pursuant to 23 section 4f(a)(2), floor broker or floor trader exempt from 24 registration pursuant to section 4f(a)(3), associated per-25 son exempt from registration pursuant to section 4k(6),

or board of trade designated as a contract market in a 1 2 security futures product pursuant to section 5f shall be 3 subject to such reasonable periodic or special examinations 4 by representatives of the Commission as the Commission 5 deems necessary or appropriate in the public interest, for the protection of investors, or otherwise in furtherance of 6 7 the purposes of this Act, and the Commission, before con-8 ducting any such examination, shall give notice to the Se-9 curities and Exchange Commission of the proposed exam-10 ination and consult with the Securities and Exchange 11 Commission concerning the feasibility and desirability of 12 coordinating the examination with examinations conducted by the Securities and Exchange Commission in order to 13 avoid unnecessary regulatory duplication or undue regu-14 15 latory burdens for the registrant or board of trade.

16 "(II) The Commission shall notify the Securities and Exchange Commission of any examination conducted of 17 any futures commission merchant or introducing broker 18 19 registered pursuant to section 4f(a)(2), floor broker or 20floor trader exempt from registration pursuant to section 21 4f(a)(3), associated person exempt from registration pur-22 suant to section 4k(6), or board of trade designated as 23 a contract market in a security futures product pursuant 24 to section 5f, and, upon request, furnish to the Securities 25 and Exchange Commission any examination report and

data supplied to or prepared by the Commission in connec tion with the examination.

3 "(III) Before conducting an examination under subclause (I), the Commission shall use the reports of exami-4 5 nations, unless the information sought is unavailable in the reports, of any futures commission merchant or intro-6 7 ducing broker registered pursuant to section 4f(a)(2), 8 floor broker or floor trader exempt from registration pur-9 suant to section 4f(a)(3), associated person exempt from 10 registration pursuant to section 4k(6), or board of trade designated as a contract market in a security futures 11 12 product pursuant to section 5f that is made by the Securi-13 ties and Exchange Commission, a national securities association registered pursuant to section 15A(a) of the Secu-14 15 rities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 780-3(a)), or a national securities exchange registered pursuant to section 16 17 6(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 18 78f(a)).

19 "(IV) Any records required under this subsection for 20 a futures commission merchant or introducing broker reg-21 istered pursuant to section 4f(a)(2), floor broker or floor 22 trader exempt from registration pursuant to section 23 4f(a)(3), associated person exempt from registration pur-24 suant to section 4k(6), or board of trade designated as 25 a contract market in a security futures product pursuant to section 5f, shall be limited to records with respect to
 accounts, agreements, contracts, and transactions involv ing security futures products.

4 "(v)(I) The Commission and the Securities and Ex-5 change Commission, by rule, regulation, or order, may jointly modify the criteria specified in subclause (I) or 6 7 (III) of clause (i), including the trading of security futures 8 based on securities other than equity securities, to the ex-9 tent such modification fosters the development of fair and 10 orderly markets in security futures products, is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, and is consistent with 11 the protection of investors. 12

13 "(II) The Commission and the Securities and Ex-14 change Commission, by order, may jointly exempt any per-15 son from compliance with the criterion specified in clause 16 (i)(IV) to the extent such exemption fosters the develop-17 ment of fair and orderly markets in security futures prod-18 ucts, is necessary or appropriate in the public interest, and 19 is consistent with the protection of investors.

20 "(vi)(I) Notwithstanding clauses (i) and (vii), until
21 the compliance date, a board of trade shall not be required
22 to meet the criterion specified in clause (i)(IV).

23 "(II) The Commission and the Securities and Ex-24 change Commission shall jointly publish in the Federal

Register a notice of the compliance date no later than 165
 days before the compliance date.

210

3 "(III) For purposes of this clause, the term 'compli4 ance date' means the later of—

"(aa) 180 days after the end of the first full 5 6 calendar month period in which the average aggre-7 gate comparable share volume for all security fu-8 tures products based on single equity securities trad-9 ed on all designated contract markets and registered 10 derivatives transaction execution facilities equals or 11 exceeds 10 percent of the average aggregate com-12 parable share volume of options on single equity se-13 curities traded on all national securities exchanges 14 registered pursuant to section 6(a) of the Securities 15 Exchange Act of 1934 and any national securities 16 associations registered pursuant to section 15A(a) of 17 such Act; or

18 "(bb) 2 years after the date on which trading
19 in any security futures product commences under
20 this Act.

21 "(vii) It shall be unlawful for a board of trade to 22 trade or execute a security futures product unless the 23 board of trade has provided the Commission with a certifi-24 cation that the specific security futures product and the 25 board of trade, as applicable, meet the criteria specified

•HR 5660 IH

in subclauses (I) through (XI) of clause (i), except as oth erwise provided in clause (vi).".

3 (b) MARGIN ON SECURITY FUTURES.—Section
4 2(a)(1)(C)(vi) of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C.
5 2a(vi)) (as redesignated by section 34) is amended—

6 (1) by redesignating subclause (V) as subclause7 (VI); and

(2) by striking "(vi)(I)" and all that follows 8 9 through subclause (IV) and inserting the following: 10 "(v)(I) Notwithstanding any other provision of 11 this Act, any contract market in a stock index fu-12 tures contract (or option thereon) other than a secu-13 rity futures product, or any derivatives transaction 14 execution facility on which such contract or option 15 is traded, shall file with the Board of Governors of 16 the Federal Reserve System any rule establishing or 17 changing the levels of margin (initial and mainte-18 nance) for such stock index futures contract (or op-19 tion thereon) other than security futures products.

"(II) The Board may at any time request any
contract market or derivatives transaction execution
facility to set the margin for any stock index futures
contract (or option thereon), other than for any security futures product, at such levels as the Board
in its judgment determines are appropriate to pre-

1 serve the financial integrity of the contract market 2 or derivatives transaction execution facility, or its 3 clearing system, or to prevent systemic risk. If the 4 contract market or derivatives transaction execution 5 facility fails to do so within the time specified by the 6 Board in its request, the Board may direct the con-7 tract market or derivatives transaction execution fa-8 cility to alter or supplement the rules of the contract 9 market or derivatives transaction execution facility 10 as specified in the request.

11 "(III) Subject to such conditions as the Board 12 may determine, the Board may delegate any or all 13 of its authority, relating to margin for any stock 14 index futures contract (or option thereon), other 15 than security futures products, under this clause to 16 the Commission.

"(IV) It shall be unlawful for any futures commission merchant to, directly or indirectly, extend or
maintain credit to or for, or collect margin from any
customer on any security futures product unless
such activities comply with the regulations prescribed pursuant to section 7(c)(2)(B) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

24 "(V) Nothing in this clause shall supersede or25 limit the authority granted to the Commission in

| reg- y, on oorary on on secu- nodity llows: |
|---|
| orary on on secu- nodity |
| on on secu- nodity |
| secu- nodity |
| nodity |
| · |
| · |
| llows |
| 110 11 51 |
| J RITY |
| CON- |
| RIVA- |
| ITIES. |
| pro- |
| prod- |
| atives |
| |
| ed by |
| ed by |
| ed by dual |
| c |
| dual |
| dual |
| dual nce of |
| dual nce of nmis- |
| |

| 1 | "(A) exceptions for spread transactions |
|----|---|
| 2 | and the correction of trading errors; |
| 3 | "(B) allowance for a customer to designate |
| 4 | in writing not less than once annually a named |
| 5 | floor broker to execute orders for such cus- |
| 6 | tomer, notwithstanding the regulations to pro- |
| 7 | hibit the privilege of dual trading required |
| 8 | under this section; and |
| 9 | "(C) other measures reasonably designed |
| 10 | to accommodate unique or special characteris- |
| 11 | tics of individual boards of trade or contract |
| 12 | markets, to address emergency or unusual mar- |
| 13 | ket conditions, or otherwise to further the pub- |
| 14 | lic interest consistent with the promotion of |
| 15 | market efficiency, innovation, and expansion of |
| 16 | investment opportunities, the protection of in- |
| 17 | vestors, and with the purposes of this section. |
| 18 | "(b) As used in this section, the term 'dual trading' |
| 19 | means the execution of customer orders by a floor broker |
| 20 | during the same trading session in which the floor broker |
| 21 | executes any trade in the same contract market or reg- |
| 22 | istered derivatives transaction execution facility for— |
| 23 | "(1) the account of such floor broker; |
| 24 | ((2) an account for which such floor broker has |
| 25 | trading discretion; or |

| | -10 |
|----|--|
| 1 | ((3) an account controlled by a person with |
| 2 | whom such floor broker has a relationship through |
| 3 | membership in a broker association. |
| 4 | "(c) As used in this section, the term 'broker associa- |
| 5 | tion' shall include two or more contract market members |
| 6 | or registered derivatives transaction execution facility |
| 7 | members with floor trading privileges of whom at least one |
| 8 | is acting as a floor broker, who— |
| 9 | "(1) engage in floor brokerage activity on be- |
| 10 | half of the same employer, |
| 11 | "(2) have an employer and employee relation- |
| 12 | ship which relates to floor brokerage activity, |
| 13 | "(3) share profits and losses associated with |
| 14 | their brokerage or trading activity, or |
| 15 | "(4) regularly share a deck of orders.". |
| 16 | (d) EXEMPTION FROM REGISTRATION FOR INVEST- |
| 17 | MENT ADVISERS.—Section 4m of the Commodity Ex- |
| 18 | change Act (7 U.S.C. 6m) is amended by adding at the |
| 19 | end the following: |
| 20 | "(3) Subsection (1) of this section shall not apply to |
| 21 | any commodity trading advisor that is registered with the |
| 22 | Securities and Exchange Commission as an investment ad- |
| 23 | viser whose business does not consist primarily of acting |
| 24 | as a commodity trading advisor, as defined in section |
| 25 | 1a(6), and that does not act as a commodity trading advi- |
| | |

sor to any investment trust, syndicate, or similar form of
 enterprise that is engaged primarily in trading in any com modity for future delivery on or subject to the rules of
 any contract market or registered derivatives transaction
 execution facility.".

6 (e) EXEMPTION FROM INVESTIGATIONS OF MARKETS
7 IN UNDERLYING SECURITIES.—Section 16 of the Com8 modity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 20) is amended by adding
9 at the end the following:

10 "(e) This section shall not apply to investigations in11 volving any security underlying a security futures prod12 uct.".

(f) RULEMAKING AUTHORITY TO ADDRESS DUPLI14 CATIVE REGULATION OF DUAL REGISTRANTS.—Section
15 4d of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 6d) is
16 amended—

17 (1) by inserting "(a)" before the first undesig-18 nated paragraph;

19 (2) by inserting "(b)" before the second undes-20 ignated paragraph; and

21 (3) by adding at the end the following:

"(c) Consistent with this Act, the Commission, in consultation with the Securities and Exchange Commission, shall issue such rules, regulations, or orders as are necessary to avoid duplicative or conflicting regulations applicable to any futures commission merchant registered
 with the Commission pursuant to section 4f(a) (except
 paragraph (2) thereof), that is also registered with the
 Securities and Exchange Commission pursuant to section
 15(b) of the Securities Exchange Act (except paragraph
 (11) thereof), involving the application of—

"(1) section 8, section 15(c)(3), and section 17 7 8 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and the 9 rules and regulations thereunder related to the treat-10 ment of customer funds, securities, or property, 11 maintenance of books and records, financial report-12 ing or other financial responsibility rules (as defined 13 in section 3(a)(40) of the Securities Exchange Act 14 of 1934), involving security futures products; and

15 "(2) similar provisions of this Act and the rules
16 and regulations thereunder involving security futures
17 products.".

(g) OBLIGATION TO ADDRESS DUPLICATIVE REGULATION OF DUAL REGISTRANTS.—Section 17 of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 21) is amended by adding
at the end the following:

"(r) Consistent with this Act, each futures association registered under this section shall issue such rules as are necessary to avoid duplicative or conflicting rules applicable to any futures commission merchant registered with the Commission pursuant to section 4f(a) of this Act
 (except paragraph (2) thereof), that is also registered with
 the Securities and Exchange Commission pursuant to sec tion 15(b) of the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934
 (except paragraph (11) thereof), with respect to the appli cation of—

7 "(1) rules of such futures association of the
8 type specified in section 4d(3) of this Act involving
9 security futures products; and

"(2) similar rules of national securities associations registered pursuant to section 15A(a) of the
Securities and Exchange Act of 1934 involving security futures products.".

(h) OBLIGATION TO ADDRESS DUPLICATIVE REGULATION OF DUAL REGISTRANTS.—Section 5c of the Commodity Exchange Act (as added by section 114) is amended by adding at the end the following:

18 "(f) Consistent with this Act, each designated contract market and registered derivatives transaction execu-19 20 tion facility shall issue such rules as are necessary to avoid 21 duplicative or conflicting rules applicable to any futures commission merchant registered with the Commission pur-22 23 suant to section 4f(a) of this Act (except paragraph (2)) 24 thereof), that is also registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission pursuant to section 15(b) of the 25

3 "(1) rules of such designated contract market
4 or registered derivatives transaction execution facil5 ity of the type specified in section 4d(3) of this Act
6 involving security futures products; and

"(2) similar rules of national securities associations registered pursuant to section 15A(a) of the
Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and national securities exchanges registered pursuant to section 6(g)
of such Act involving security futures products.".

12 (i) Obligation To Address Security Futures 13 PRODUCTS TRADED ON FOREIGN EXCHANGES.—Section 2(a)(1) of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 2, 2a, 14 15 and 4) is amended by adding at the end the following: 16 "(E)(i) To the extent necessary or appropriate in the 17 public interest, to promote fair competition, and consistent 18 with promotion of market efficiency, innovation, and expansion of investment opportunities, the protection of in-19 vestors, and the maintenance of fair and orderly markets, 20 21 the Commission and the Securities and Exchange Com-22 mission shall jointly issue such rules, regulations, or or-23 ders as are necessary and appropriate to permit the offer 24 and sale of a security futures product traded on or subject to the rules of a foreign board of trade to United States
 persons.

"(ii) The rules, regulations, or orders adopted under
clause (i) shall take into account, as appropriate, the nature and size of the markets that the securities underlying
the security futures product reflects.".

7 (j) SECURITY FUTURES PRODUCTS TRADED ON
8 FOREIGN BOARDS OF TRADE.—Section 2(a)(1) of the
9 Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 2, 2a, and 4) is
10 amended by adding at the end the following:

"(F)(i) Nothing in this Act is intended to prohibit a futures commission merchant from carrying security futures products traded on or subject to the rules of a foreign board of trade in the accounts of persons located outside of the United States.

16 "(ii) Nothing in this Act is intended to prohibit any 17 eligible contract participant located in the United States from purchasing or carrying securities futures products 18 19 traded on or subject to the rules of a foreign board of 20 trade, exchange, or market to the same extent such person 21 may be authorized to purchase or carry other securities 22 traded on a foreign board of trade, exchange, or market 23 so long as any underlying security for such security futures products is traded principally on, by, or through any 24 25 exchange or market located outside the United States.".

 1
 SEC. 252. APPLICATION OF THE COMMODITY EXCHANGE

 2
 ACT TO NATIONAL SECURITIES EXCHANGES

 3
 AND NATIONAL SECURITIES ASSOCIATIONS

 4
 THAT TRADE SECURITY FUTURES.

5 (a) NOTICE DESIGNATION OF NATIONAL SECURITIES
6 EXCHANGES AND NATIONAL SECURITIES ASSOCIA7 TIONS.—The Commodity Exchange Act is amended by in8 serting after section 5e (7 U.S.C. 7b), as redesignated by
9 section 21(1), the following:

10"SEC. 5f. DESIGNATION OF SECURITIES EXCHANGES AND11ASSOCIATIONS AS CONTRACT MARKETS.

12 "(a) Any board of trade that is registered with the 13 Securities and Exchange Commission as a national securi-14 ties exchange, is a national securities association reg-15 istered pursuant to section 15A(a) of the Securities Ex-16 change Act of 1934, or is an alternative trading system 17 shall be a designated contract market in security futures 18 products if—

"(1) such national securities exchange, national
securities association, or alternative trading system
lists or trades no other contracts of sale for future
delivery, except for security futures products;

23 "(2) such national securities exchange, national
24 securities association, or alternative trading system
25 files written notice with the Commission in such
26 form as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe con-

taining such information as the Commission, by rule,
 may prescribe as necessary or appropriate in the
 public interest or for the protection of customers;
 and

5 "(3) the registration of such national securities 6 exchange, national securities association, or alter-7 native trading system is not suspended pursuant to 8 an order by the Securities and Exchange Commis-9 sion.

10 Such designation shall be effective contemporaneously11 with the submission of notice, in written or electronic12 form, to the Commission.

"(b)(1) A national securities exchange, national securities association, or alternative trading system that is designated as a contract market pursuant to section 5f shall
be exempt from the following provisions of this Act and
the rules thereunder:

18 "(A) Subsections (c), (e), and (g) of section 4c.

- 19 "(B) Section 4j.
- 20 "(C) Section 5.
- 21 "(D) Section 5c.
- 22 "(E) Section 6a.
- 23 "(F) Section 8(d).
- 24 "(G) Section 9(f).
- 25 "(H) Section 16.

1 "(2) An alternative trading system that is a des-2 ignated contract market under this section shall be re-3 quired to be a member of a futures association registered 4 under section 17 and shall be exempt from any provision 5 of this Act that would require such alternative trading sys-6 tem to—

7 "(A) set rules governing the conduct of sub8 scribers other than the conduct of such subscribers'
9 trading on such alternative trading system; or

10 "(B) discipline subscribers other than by exclu-11 sion from trading.

12 "(3) To the extent that an alternative trading system 13 is exempt from any provision of this Act pursuant to para-14 graph (2) of this subsection, the futures association reg-15 istered under section 17 of which the alternative trading 16 system is a member shall set rules governing the conduct 17 of subscribers to the alternative trading system and dis-18 cipline the subscribers.

19 "(4)(A) Except as provided in subparagraph (B), but 20 notwithstanding any other provision of this Act, the Com-21 mission, by rule, regulation, or order, may conditionally 22 or unconditionally exempt any designated contract market 23 in security futures subject to the designation requirement 24 of this section from any provision of this Act or of any 25 rule or regulation thereunder, to the extent such exemption is necessary or appropriate in the public interest and
 is consistent with the protection of investors.

3 "(B) The Commission shall, by rule or regulation, de4 termine the procedures under which an exemptive order
5 under this section is granted and may, in its sole discre6 tion, decline to entertain any application for an order of
7 exemption under this section.

8 "(C) An alternative trading system shall not be 9 deemed to be an exchange for any purpose as a result of 10 the designation of such alternative trading system as a 11 contract market under this section.".

(b) NOTICE REGISTRATION OF CERTAIN SECURITIES
BROKER-DEALERS; EXEMPTION FROM REGISTRATION
FOR CERTAIN SECURITIES BROKER-DEALERS.—Section
4f(a) of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 6f(a))
is amended—

17 (1) by inserting "(1)" after "(a)"; and

18 (2) by adding at the end the following:

"(2) Notwithstanding paragraph (1), and except as
provided in paragraph (3), any broker or dealer that is
registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission
shall be registered as a futures commission merchant or
introducing broker, as applicable, if—

24 "(A) the broker or dealer limits its solicitation
25 of orders, acceptance of orders, or execution of or-

| 1 | ders, or placing of orders on behalf of others involv- |
|----|---|
| 2 | ing any contracts of sale of any commodity for fu- |
| 3 | ture delivery, on or subject to the rules of any con- |
| 4 | tract market or registered derivatives transaction |
| 5 | execution facility to security futures products; |
| 6 | "(B) the broker or dealer files written notice |
| 7 | with the Commission in such form as the Commis- |
| 8 | sion, by rule, may prescribe containing such infor- |
| 9 | mation as the Commission, by rule, may prescribe as |
| 10 | necessary or appropriate in the public interest or for |
| 11 | the protection of investors; |
| 12 | "(C) the registration of the broker or dealer is |
| 13 | not suspended pursuant to an order of the Securities |
| 14 | and Exchange Commission; and |
| 15 | "(D) the broker or dealer is a member of a na- |
| 16 | tional securities association registered pursuant to |
| 17 | section 15A(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of |
| 18 | 1934. |
| 19 | The registration shall be effective contemporaneously with |
| 20 | the submission of notice, in written or electronic form, to |
| 21 | the Commission. |
| 22 | ((3) A floor broker or floor trader shall be exempt |
| 23 | from the registration requirements of section 4e and para- |
| 24 | graph (1) of this subsection if— |

"(A) the floor broker or floor trader is a broker
 or dealer registered with the Securities and Ex change Commission;

4 "(B) the floor broker or floor trader limits its
5 solicitation of orders, acceptance of orders, or execu6 tion of orders, or placing of orders on behalf of oth7 ers involving any contracts of sale of any commodity
8 for future delivery, on or subject to the rules of any
9 contract market to security futures products; and

"(C) the registration of the floor broker or floor
trader is not suspended pursuant to an order of the
Securities and Exchange Commission.".

(c) EXEMPTION FOR SECURITIES BROKER-DEALERS
14 FROM CERTAIN PROVISIONS OF THE COMMODITY EX15 CHANGE ACT.—Section 4f(a) of the Commodity Exchange
16 Act (7 U.S.C. 6f(a)) is amended by inserting after para17 graph (3), as added by subsection (b) of this section, the
18 following:

"(4)(A) A broker or dealer that is registered as a futures commission merchant or introducing broker pursuant to paragraph (2), or that is a floor broker or floor
trader exempt from registration pursuant to paragraph
(3), shall be exempt from the following provisions of this
Act and the rules thereunder:

| 1 | "(i) Subsections (b), (d), (e), and (g) of section |
|----|--|
| 2 | 4c. |
| 3 | "(ii) Sections 4d, 4e, and 4h. |
| 4 | "(iii) Subsections (b) and (c) of this section. |
| 5 | "(iv) Section 4j. |
| 6 | "(v) Section $4k(1)$. |
| 7 | "(vi) Section 4p. |
| 8 | "(vii) Section 6d. |
| 9 | "(viii) Subsections (d) and (g) of section 8. |
| 10 | "(ix) Section 16. |
| 11 | "(B)(i) Except as provided in clause (ii) of this sub- |
| 12 | paragraph, but notwithstanding any other provision of this |
| 13 | Act, the Commission, by rule, regulation, or order, may |
| 14 | conditionally or unconditionally exempt any broker or |
| 15 | dealer subject to the registration requirement of para- |
| 16 | graph (2), or any broker or dealer exempt from registra- |
| 17 | tion pursuant to paragraph (3), from any provision of this |
| 18 | Act or of any rule or regulation thereunder, to the extent |
| 19 | the exemption is necessary or appropriate in the public |
| | |

21 "(ii) The Commission shall, by rule or regulation, de-22 termine the procedures under which an exemptive order 23 under this section shall be granted and may, in its sole 24 discretion, decline to entertain any application for an 25 order of exemption under this section.

20 interest and is consistent with the protection of investors.

1 "(C)(i) A broker or dealer that is registered as a fu-2 tures commission merchant or introducing broker pursu-3 ant to paragraph (2) or an associated person thereof, or 4 that is a floor broker or floor trader exempt from registra-5 tion pursuant to paragraph (3), shall not be required to 6 become a member of any futures association registered 7 under section 17.

8 "(ii) No futures association registered under section 9 17 shall limit its members from carrying an account, ac-10 cepting an order, or transacting business with a broker or dealer that is registered as a futures commission mer-11 12 chant or introducing broker pursuant to paragraph (2) or 13 an associated person thereof, or that is a floor broker or floor trader exempt from registration pursuant to para-14 15 graph (3).".

(d) EXEMPTIONS FOR ASSOCIATED PERSONS OF SE17 CURITIES BROKER-DEALERS.—Section 4k of the Com18 modity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 6k), is amended by insert19 ing after paragraph (4), as added by subsection (c) of this
20 section, the following:

21 "(5) Any associated person of a broker or dealer that
22 is registered with the Securities and Exchange Commis23 sion, and who limits its solicitation of orders, acceptance
24 of orders, or execution of orders, or placing of orders on
25 behalf of others involving any contracts of sale of any com-

| 1 | modity for future delivery or any option on such a con- |
|--|--|
| 2 | tract, on or subject to the rules of any contract market |
| 3 | or registered derivatives transaction execution facility to |
| 4 | security futures products, shall be exempt from the fol- |
| 5 | lowing provisions of this Act and the rules thereunder: |
| 6 | "(A) Subsections (b), (d), (e), and (g) of section |
| 7 | 4c. |
| 8 | "(B) Sections 4d, 4e, and 4h. |
| 9 | "(C) Subsections (b) and (c) of section 4f. |
| 10 | "(D) Section 4j. |
| 11 | "(E) Paragraph (1) of this section. |
| 12 | "(F) Section 4p. |
| 10 | "(G) Section 6d. |
| 13 | (d) beetion ou. |
| 13 14 | "(H) Subsections (d) and (g) of section 8. |
| | |
| 14 | "(H) Subsections (d) and (g) of section 8. |
| 14 15 | "(H) Subsections (d) and (g) of section 8. "(I) Section 16.". |
| 14 15 16 | "(H) Subsections (d) and (g) of section 8."(I) Section 16.".SEC. 253. NOTIFICATION OF INVESTIGATIONS AND EN- |
| 14 15 16 17 | "(H) Subsections (d) and (g) of section 8. "(I) Section 16.". SEC. 253. NOTIFICATION OF INVESTIGATIONS AND EN- FORCEMENT ACTIONS. |
| 14 15 16 17 18 | "(H) Subsections (d) and (g) of section 8. "(I) Section 16.". SEC. 253. NOTIFICATION OF INVESTIGATIONS AND EN- FORCEMENT ACTIONS. (a) Section 8(a) of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 |
| 14 15 16 17 18 19 | "(H) Subsections (d) and (g) of section 8. "(I) Section 16.". SEC. 253. NOTIFICATION OF INVESTIGATIONS AND EN- FORCEMENT ACTIONS. (a) Section 8(a) of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 12(a)) is amended by adding at the end the fol- |
| 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 | "(H) Subsections (d) and (g) of section 8. "(I) Section 16.". SEC. 253. NOTIFICATION OF INVESTIGATIONS AND EN- FORCEMENT ACTIONS. (a) Section 8(a) of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 12(a)) is amended by adding at the end the following: |
| 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 | "(H) Subsections (d) and (g) of section 8. "(I) Section 16.". SEC. 253. NOTIFICATION OF INVESTIGATIONS AND EN- FORCEMENT ACTIONS. (a) Section 8(a) of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 12(a)) is amended by adding at the end the following: "(3) The Commission shall provide the Securities and |
| 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 | "(H) Subsections (d) and (g) of section 8. "(I) Section 16.". SEC. 253. NOTIFICATION OF INVESTIGATIONS AND EN- FORCEMENT ACTIONS. (a) Section 8(a) of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 12(a)) is amended by adding at the end the following: "(3) The Commission shall provide the Securities and Exchange Commission with notice of the commencement |
| 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 | "(H) Subsections (d) and (g) of section 8. "(I) Section 16.". SEC. 253. NOTIFICATION OF INVESTIGATIONS AND EN- FORCEMENT ACTIONS. (a) Section 8(a) of the Commodity Exchange Act (7 U.S.C. 12(a)) is amended by adding at the end the following: "(3) The Commission shall provide the Securities and Exchange Commission with notice of the commencement of any proceeding and a copy of any order entered by the |

any floor broker or floor trader exempt from registration
 pursuant to section 4f(a)(3), any associated person exempt
 from registration pursuant to section 4k(6), or any board
 of trade designated as a contract market pursuant to sec tion 5f.".

6 (b) Section 6 of the Commodity Exchange Act (7
7 U.S.C. 8, 9, 9a, 9b, 13b, 15) is amended by adding at
8 the end the following:

9 "(g) The Commission shall provide the Securities and 10 Exchange Commission with notice of the commencement of any proceeding and a copy of any order entered by the 11 12 Commission pursuant to subsections (c) and (d) of this 13 section against any futures commission merchant or introducing broker registered pursuant to section 4f(a)(2), any 14 15 floor broker or floor trader exempt from registration pursuant to section 4f(a)(3), any associated person exempt 16 17 from registration pursuant to section 4k(6), or any board of trade designated as a contract market pursuant to sec-18 19 tion 5f.".

20 (c) Section 6c of the Commodity Exchange Act (7
21 U.S.C. 13a-1) is amended by adding at the end the fol22 lowing:

23 "(h) The Commission shall provide the Securities and
24 Exchange Commission with notice of the commencement
25 of any proceeding and a copy of any order entered by the

Commission against any futures commission merchant or
 introducing broker registered pursuant to section 4f(a)(2),
 any floor broker or floor trader exempt from registration
 pursuant to section 4f(a)(3), any associated person exempt
 from registration pursuant to section 4k(6), or any board
 of trade designated as a contract market pursuant to sec tion 5f.".

8 TITLE III—LEGAL CERTAINTY 9 FOR SWAP AGREEMENTS

10 SEC. 301. SWAP AGREEMENT.

(a) AMENDMENT.—Title II of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act (Public Law 106–102) is amended by inserting
after section 206 the following new sections:

14 "SEC. 206A. SWAP AGREEMENT.

"(a) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in subsection 15 (b), as used in this section, the term 'swap agreement' 16 means any agreement, contract, or transaction between el-17 igible contract participants (as defined in section 1a(12)) 18 of the Commodity Exchange Act as in effect on the date 19 of the enactment of this section), other than a person that 20 21 is an eligible contract participant under section 1a(12)(C)22 of the Commodity Exchange Act, the material terms of 23 which (other than price and quantity) are subject to indi-24 vidual negotiation, and that"(1) is a put, call, cap, floor, collar, or similar
option of any kind for the purchase or sale of, or
based on the value of, one or more interest or other
rates, currencies, commodities, indices, quantitative
measures, or other financial or economic interests or
property of any kind;

"(2) provides for any purchase, sale, payment
or delivery (other than a dividend on an equity security) that is dependent on the occurrence, non-occurrence, or the extent of the occurrence of an event or
contingency associated with a potential financial,
economic, or commercial consequence;

13 "(3) provides on an executory basis for the ex-14 change, on a fixed or contingent basis, of one or 15 more payments based on the value or level of one or 16 more interest or other rates, currencies, commod-17 ities, securities, instruments of indebtedness, indices, 18 quantitative measures, or other financial or eco-19 nomic interests or property of any kind, or any in-20 terest therein or based on the value thereof, and 21 that transfers, as between the parties to the trans-22 action, in whole or in part, the financial risk associ-23 ated with a future change in any such value or level 24 without also conveying a current or future direct or 25 indirect ownership interest in an asset (including

| 1 | any enterprise or investment pool) or liability that |
|----|--|
| 2 | incorporates the financial risk so transferred, includ- |
| 3 | ing any such agreement, contract, or transaction |
| 4 | commonly known as an interest rate swap, including |
| 5 | a rate floor, rate cap, rate collar, cross-currency rate |
| 6 | swap, basis swap, currency swap, equity index swap, |
| 7 | equity swap, debt index swap, debt swap, credit |
| 8 | spread, credit default swap, credit swap, weather |
| 9 | swap, or commodity swap; |
| 10 | "(4) provides for the purchase or sale, on a |
| 11 | fixed or contingent basis, of any commodity, cur- |
| 12 | rency, instrument, interest, right, service, good, arti- |
| 13 | cle, or property of any kind; or |
| 14 | "(5) is any combination or permutation of, or |
| 15 | option on, any agreement, contract, or transaction |
| 16 | described in any of paragraphs (1) through (4). |
| 17 | "(b) EXCLUSIONS.—The term 'swap agreement' does |
| 18 | not include— |
| 19 | "(1) any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege |
| 20 | on any security, certificate of deposit, or group or |
| 21 | index of securities, including any interest therein or |
| 22 | based on the value thereof; |
| 23 | "(2) any put, call, straddle, option, or privilege |
| 24 | entered into on a national securities exchange reg- |

| Securities Ex- currency; or transaction ne or more se- or transaction ne or more se- ss such agree- ates such pur- bona fide con- |
|---|
| or transaction ne or more se- or transaction ne or more se- ss such agree- ates such pur- bona fide con- |
| ne or more se- or transaction ne or more se- ss such agree- ates such pur- bona fide con- |
| or transaction me or more se- ss such agree- ates such pur- bona fide con- |
| ne or more se- ss such agree- ates such pur- bona fide con- |
| ne or more se- ss such agree- ates such pur- bona fide con- |
| ss such agree- ates such pur- bona fide con- |
| ates such pur- bona fide con- |
| bona fide con- |
| |
| |
| ected to affect |
| ess of a party |
| t, contract, or |
| |
| e of indebted- |
| section $2(a)(1)$ |
| on 3(a)(10) of |
| or |
| or transaction |
| |
| d |
| or through an |
| 9(a) of the |
| on $2(a)$ of the |
| uer of such se- |
| (|

such agreement, contract, or transaction is entered into to manage a risk associated with capital raising.

"(c) RULE OF CONSTRUCTION REGARDING MASTER 4 5 AGREEMENTS.—As used in this section, the term 'swap agreement' shall be construed to include a master agree-6 7 ment that provides for an agreement, contract, or trans-8 action that is a swap agreement pursuant to subsections 9 (a) and (b), together with all supplements to any such 10 master agreement, without regard to whether the master 11 agreement contains an agreement, contract, or transaction 12 that is not a swap agreement pursuant to subsections (a) 13 and (b), except that the master agreement shall be consid-14 ered to be a swap agreement only with respect to each 15 agreement, contract, or transaction under the master agreement that is a swap agreement pursuant to sub-16 17 sections (a) and (b).

18 "SEC. 206B. SECURITY-BASED SWAP AGREEMENT.

19 "As used in this section, the term 'security-based 20 swap agreement' means a swap agreement (as defined in 21 section 206A) of which a material term is based on the 22 price, yield, value, or volatility of any security or any 23 group or index of securities, or any interest therein.

1

2

3

1 "SEC. 206C. NON-SECURITY-BASED SWAP AGREEMENT.

2 "As used in this section, the term 'non-security-based
3 swap agreement' means any swap agreement (as defined
4 in section 206A) that is not a security-based swap agree5 ment (as defined in section 206B).".

6 (b) SECURITY DEFINITION.—As used in the amend7 ment made by subsection (a), the term "security" has the
8 same meaning as in section 2(a)(1) of the Securities Act
9 of 1933 or section 3(a)(10) of the Securities Exchange
10 Act of 1934.

11 SEC. 302. AMENDMENTS TO THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933.

(a) ENFORCEMENT FOCUS.—The Securities Act of
13 1933 is amended by inserting after section 2 (15 U.S.C.
14 77b) the following new section:

15 "SEC. 2A. SWAP AGREEMENTS.

16 "(a) NON-SECURITY-BASED SWAP AGREEMENTS.—
17 The definition of 'security' in section 2(a)(1) of this title
18 does not include any non-security-based swap agreement
19 (as defined in section 206C of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley
20 Act).

21 "(b) Security-Based Swap Agreements.—

"(1) The definition of 'security' in section
2(a)(1) of this title does not include any securitybased swap agreement (as defined in section 206B
of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act).

1 "(2) The Commission is prohibited from reg-2 istering, or requiring, recommending, or suggesting, 3 the registration under this title of any security-based 4 swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the 5 Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act). If the Commission be-6 comes aware that a registrant has filed a registra-7 tion statement with respect to such a swap agree-8 ment, the Commission shall promptly so notify the 9 registrant. Any such registration statement with re-10 spect to such a swap agreement shall be void and of 11 no force or effect. 12 "(3) The Commission is prohibited from— "(A) promulgating, interpreting, or enforc-13 14 ing rules; or 15 "(B) issuing orders of general applicability; 16 under this title in a manner that imposes or speci-17 fies reporting or recordkeeping requirements, proce-18 dures, or standards as prophylactic measures against 19 fraud, manipulation, or insider trading with respect 20 to any security-based swap agreement (as defined in 21 section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act). 22 "(4) References in this title to the 'purchase' or 23 'sale' of a security-based swap agreement shall be

25 its scheduled maturity date), assignment, exchange,

deemed to mean the execution, termination (prior to

24

or similar transfer or conveyance of, or extinguishing
 of rights or obligations under, a security-based swap
 agreement (as defined in section 206B of the
 Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act), as the context may re quire.".

6 (b) ANTI-FRAUD AND ANTI-MANIPULATION EN7 FORCEMENT AUTHORITY.—Section 17(a) of the Securities
8 Act of 1933 (15 U.S.C. 77q(a)) is amended to read as
9 follows:

10 "(a) It shall be unlawful for any person in the offer 11 or sale of any securities or any security-based swap agree-12 ment (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-13 Bliley Act) by the use of any means or instruments of 14 transportation or communication in interstate commerce 15 or by use of the mails, directly or indirectly—

16 "(1) to employ any device, scheme, or artifice to17 defraud, or

18 "(2) to obtain money or property by means of 19 any untrue statement of a material fact or any omis-20 sion to state a material fact necessary in order to 21 make the statements made, in light of the cir-22 cumstances under which they were made, not mis-23 leading; or "(3) to engage in any transaction, practice, or
 course of business which operates or would operate
 as a fraud or deceit upon the purchaser.".

4 (c) LIMITATION.—Section 17 of the Securities Act of
5 1933 is amended by adding at the end the following new
6 subsection:

7 "(d) The authority of the Commission under this sec8 tion with respect to security-based swap agreements (as
9 defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act)
10 shall be subject to the restrictions and limitations of sec11 tion 2A(b) of this title.".

12 SEC. 303. AMENDMENTS TO THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE 13 ACT OF 1934.

14 (a) ENFORCEMENT FOCUS.—The Securities Ex15 change Act of 1934 is amended by inserting after section
16 3 (15 U.S.C. 78c) the following new section:

17 "SEC. 3A. SWAP AGREEMENTS.

18 "(a) NON-SECURITY-BASED SWAP AGREEMENTS.—
19 The definition of 'security' in section 3(a)(10) of this title
20 does not include any non-security-based swap agreement
21 (as defined in section 206C of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley
22 Act).

23 "(b) Security-Based Swap Agreements.—

24 "(1) The definition of 'security' in section
25 3(a)(10) of this title does not include any security-

based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B
 of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act).

3 "(2) The Commission is prohibited from reg-4 istering, or requiring, recommending, or suggesting, 5 the registration under this title of any security-based 6 swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the 7 Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act). If the Commission be-8 comes aware that a registrant has filed a registra-9 tion application with respect to such a swap agree-10 ment, the Commission shall promptly so notify the 11 registrant. Any such registration with respect to 12 such a swap agreement shall be void and of no force or effect. 13

14 "(3) Except as provided in section 16(a) with
15 respect to reporting requirements, the Commission is
16 prohibited from—

17 "(A) promulgating, interpreting, or enforc-18 ing rules; or

"(B) issuing orders of general applicability;
under this title in a manner that imposes or specifies reporting or recordkeeping requirements, procedures, or standards as prophylactic measures against
fraud, manipulation, or insider trading with respect
to any security-based swap agreement (as defined in
section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act).

"(4) References in this title to the 'purchase' or 1 2 'sale' of a security-based swap agreement (as defined 3 in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) 4 shall be deemed to mean the execution, termination 5 (prior to its scheduled maturity date), assignment, 6 exchange, or similar transfer or conveyance of, or 7 extinguishing of rights or obligations under, a secu-8 rity-based swap agreement, as the context may re-9 quire.".

(b) ANTI-FRAUD, ANTI-MANIPULATION ENFORCEMENT AUTHORITY.—Paragraphs (2) through (5) of section 9(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15)
U.S.C. 78i(a)(2)–(5)) are amended to read as follows:

14 "(2) To effect, alone or with one or more other per-15 sons, a series of transactions in any security registered on a national securities exchange or in connection with 16 17 any security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 18 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) with respect to 19 such security creating actual or apparent active trading 20 in such security, or raising or depressing the price of such 21 security, for the purpose of inducing the purchase or sale 22 of such security by others.

23 "(3) If a dealer or broker, or other person selling or
24 offering for sale or purchasing or offering to purchase the
25 security or a security-based swap agreement (as defined

in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) with re-1 2 spect to such security, to induce the purchase or sale of 3 any security registered on a national securities exchange 4 or any security-based swap agreement (as defined in sec-5 tion 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) with respect to such security by the circulation or dissemination in the 6 7 ordinary course of business of information to the effect 8 that the price of any such security will or is likely to rise 9 or fall because of market operations of any one or more 10 persons conducted for the purpose of raising or depressing the price of such security. 11

"(4) If a dealer or broker, or the person selling or 12 13 offering for sale or purchasing or offering to purchase the security or a security-based swap agreement (as defined 14 15 in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) with respect to such security, to make, regarding any security 16 17 registered on a national securities exchange or any security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of 18 the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) with respect to such secu-19 20 rity, for the purpose of inducing the purchase or sale of 21 such security or such security-based swap agreement, any 22 statement which was at the time and in the light of the 23 circumstances under which it was made, false or misleading with respect to any material fact, and which he 24

knew or had reasonable ground to believe was so false or
 misleading.

3 "(5) For a consideration, received directly or indi-4 rectly from a dealer or broker, or other person selling or 5 offering for sale or purchasing or offering to purchase the security or a security-based swap agreement (as defined 6 7 in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) with re-8 spect to such security, to induce the purchase of any secu-9 rity registered on a national securities exchange or any 10 security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) with respect to 11 such security by the circulation or dissemination of infor-12 13 mation to the effect that the price of any such security will or is likely to rise or fall because of the market oper-14 15 ations of any one or more persons conducted for the purpose of raising or depressing the price of such security.". 16 17 (c) LIMITATION.—Section 9 of the Securities Ex-

18 change Act of 1934 is amended by adding at the end the19 following new subsection:

"(i) The authority of the Commission under this section with respect to security-based swap agreements (as
defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act)
shall be subject to the restrictions and limitations of section 3A(b) of this title.".

(d) REGULATIONS ON THE USE OF MANIPULATIVE
 AND DECEPTIVE DEVICES.—Section 10 of the Securities
 Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78j) is amended—

4 (1) in subsection (b), by inserting "or any secu5 rities-based swap agreement (as defined in section
6 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act)," before "any
7 manipulative or deceptive device"; and

8 (2) by adding at the end the following:

9 "Rules promulgated under subsection (b) that prohibit 10 fraud, manipulation, or insider trading (but not rules imposing or specifying reporting or recordkeeping require-11 12 ments, procedures, or standards as prophylactic measures 13 against fraud, manipulation, or insider trading), and judicial precedents decided under subsection (b) and rules pro-14 15 mulgated thereunder that prohibit fraud, manipulation, or insider trading, shall apply to security-based swap agree-16 ments (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-17 18 Bliley Act) to the same extent as they apply to securities. 19 Judicial precedents decided under section 17(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 and sections 9, 15, 16, 20, and 21A 20 21 of this title, and judicial precedents decided under applica-22 ble rules promulgated under such sections, shall apply to 23 security-based swap agreements (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) to the same extent 24 as they apply to securities.". 25

(e) BROKER, DEALER ANTI-FRAUD, ANTI-MANIPU LATION ENFORCEMENT AUTHORITY.—Section 15(c)(1) of
 the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C.
 780(c)(1)) is amended to read as follows:

5 (c)(1)(A) No broker or dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate com-6 7 merce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or attempt 8 to induce the purchase or sale of, any security (other than 9 commercial paper, bankers' acceptances, or commercial bills) otherwise than on a national securities exchange of 10 which it is a member, or any security-based swap agree-11 12 ment (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-13 Bliley Act), by means of any manipulative, deceptive, or other fraudulent device or contrivance. 14

15 "(B) No municipal securities dealer shall make use of the mails or any means or instrumentality of interstate 16 commerce to effect any transaction in, or to induce or at-17 18 tempt to induce the purchase or sale of, any municipal 19 security or any security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) involving 2021 a municipal security by means of any manipulative, decep-22 tive, or other fraudulent device or contrivance.

23 "(C) No government securities broker or government
24 securities dealer shall make use of the mails or any means
25 or instrumentality of interstate commerce to effect any

transaction in, or to induce or to attempt to induce the
 purchase or sale of, any government security or any secu rity-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of
 the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) involving a government se curity by means of any manipulative, deceptive, or other
 fraudulent device or contrivance.".

7 (f) LIMITATION.—Section 15 of the Securities Ex8 change Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 780) is amended by adding
9 at the end the following new subsection:

"(i) The authority of the Commission under this section with respect to security-based swap agreements (as
defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act)
shall be subject to the restrictions and limitations of section 3A(b) of this title.".

(g) ANTI-INSIDER TRADING ENFORCEMENT AUTHORITY.—Subsections (a) and (b) of section 16 (15)
U.S.C. 78p(a), (b)) of the Securities Exchange of 1934
are amended to read as follows:

19 "(a) Every person who is directly or indirectly the 20 beneficial owner of more than 10 per centum of any class 21 of any equity security (other than an exempted security) 22 which is registered pursuant to section 12 of this title, 23 or who is a director or an officer of the issuer of such 24 security, shall file, at the time of the registration of such 25 security on a national securities exchange or by the effec-

1 tive date of a registration statement filed pursuant to sec-2 tion 12(g) of this title, or within ten days after he becomes 3 such beneficial owner, director, or officer, a statement 4 with the Commission (and, if such security is registered 5 on a national securities exchange, also with the exchange) of the amount of all equity securities of such issuer of 6 7 which he is the beneficial owner, and within ten days after 8 the close of each calendar month thereafter, if there has 9 been a change in such ownership or if such person shall 10 have purchased or sold a security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley 11 Act) involving such equity security during such month, 12 13 shall file with the Commission (and if such security is registered on a national securities exchange, shall also file 14 15 with the exchange), a statement indicating his ownership at the close of the calendar month and such changes in 16 17 his ownership and such purchases and sales of such security-based swap agreements as have occurred during such 18 19 calendar month.

"(b) For the purpose of preventing the unfair use of information which may have been obtained by such beneficial owner, director, or officer by reason of his relationship to the issuer, any profit realized by him from any purchase and sale, or any sale and purchase, of any equity security of such issuer (other than an exempted security)

or a security-based swap agreement (as defined in section 1 2 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) involving any such 3 equity security within any period of less than six months, 4 unless such security or security-based swap agreement was 5 acquired in good faith in connection with a debt previously contracted, shall inure to and be recoverable by the issuer, 6 7 irrespective of any intention on the part of such beneficial 8 owner, director, or officer in entering into such transaction 9 of holding the security or security-based swap agreement 10 purchased or of not repurchasing the security or securitybased swap agreement sold for a period exceeding six 11 12 months. Suit to recover such profit may be instituted at 13 law or in equity in any court of competent jurisdiction by the issuer, or by the owner of any security of the issuer 14 15 in the name and in behalf of the issuer if the issuer shall fail or refuse to bring such suit within sixty days after 16 17 request or shall fail diligently to prosecute the same thereafter; but no such suit shall be brought more than two 18 years after the date such profit was realized. This sub-19 20 section shall not be construed to cover any transaction 21 where such beneficial owner was not such both at the time 22 of the purchase and sale, or the sale and purchase, of the 23 security or security-based swap agreement (as defined in 24 section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act) involved, or 25 any transaction or transactions which the Commission by rules and regulations may exempt as not comprehended
 within the purpose of this subsection.".

3 (h) LIMITATION.—Section 16 of the Securities Ex4 change Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78p) is amended by adding
5 at the end the following new subsection:

6 "(g) The authority of the Commission under this sec7 tion with respect to security-based swap agreements (as
8 defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act)
9 shall be subject to the restrictions and limitations of sec10 tion 3A(b) of this title.".

(i) MATERIAL NONPUBLIC INFORMATION.—Section
20(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C.
78t(d)) is amended to read as follows:

14 "(d) Wherever communicating, or purchasing or selling a security while in possession of, material nonpublic 15 information would violate, or result in liability to any pur-16 17 chaser or seller of the security under any provisions of this title, or any rule or regulation thereunder, such con-18 19 duct in connection with a purchase or sale of a put, call, 20straddle, option, privilege or security-based swap agree-21 ment (as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-22 Bliley Act) with respect to such security or with respect 23 to a group or index of securities including such security, shall also violate and result in comparable liability to any 24

purchaser or seller of that security under such provision,
 rule, or regulation.".

3 (j) LIMITATION.—Section 20 of the Securities Ex4 change Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78t) is amended by adding
5 at the end the following new subsection:

6 "(f) The authority of the Commission under this sec7 tion with respect to security-based swap agreements (as
8 defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act)
9 shall be subject to the restrictions and limitations of sec10 tion 3A(b) of this title.".

(k) CIVIL PENALTIES.—Section 21A(a)(1) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78u–1(a)(1))
is amended by inserting after "purchasing or selling a security" the following: "or security-based swap agreement
(as defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley
Act)".

17 (1) LIMITATION.—Section 21A of the Securities Ex18 change Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78u–1) is amended by add19 ing at the end the following new subsection:

"(g) The authority of the Commission under this section with respect to security-based swap agreements (as
defined in section 206B of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act)
shall be subject to the restrictions and limitations of section 3A(b) of this title.".

1 SEC. 304. SAVINGS PROVISIONS.

2 Nothing in this Act or the amendments made by this 3 Act shall be construed as finding or implying that any swap agreement is or is not a security for any purpose 4 5 under the securities laws. Nothing in this Act or the amendments made by this Act shall be construed as find-6 7 ing or implying that any swap agreement is or is not a 8 futures contract or commodity option for any purpose under the Commodity Exchange Act. 9

TITLE **IV—REGULATORY** RE-10 **SPONSIBILITY** FOR BANK 11 **PRODUCTS** 12

13 SEC. 401. SHORT TITLE.

14 This title may be cited as the "Legal Certainty for Bank Products Act of 2000". 15

16 SEC. 402. DEFINITIONS.

(a) BANK.—In this title, the term "bank" means— 17 18 (1) any depository institution (as defined in sec-19 tion 3(c) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act); 20 (2) any foreign bank or branch or agency of a 21 foreign bank (each as defined in section 1(b) of the

22 International Banking Act of 1978);

(3) any Federal or State credit union (as de-23 24 fined in section 101 of the Federal Credit Union 25 Act);

| 1 | (4) any corporation organized under section |
|----|---|
| 2 | 25A of the Federal Reserve Act; |
| 3 | (5) any corporation operating under section 25 |
| 4 | of the Federal Reserve Act; |
| 5 | (6) any trust company; or |
| 6 | (7) any subsidiary of any entity described in |
| 7 | paragraph (1) through (6) of this subsection, if the |
| 8 | subsidiary is regulated as if the subsidiary were part |
| 9 | of the entity and is not a broker or dealer (as such |
| 10 | terms are defined in section 3 of the Securities Ex- |
| 11 | change Act of 1934) or a futures commission mer- |
| 12 | chant (as defined in section $1a(20)$ of the Com- |
| 13 | modity Exchange Act). |
| 14 | (b) Identified Banking Product.—In this title, |
| 15 | the term "identified banking product" shall have the same |
| 16 | meaning as in paragraphs (1) through (5) of section |
| 17 | 206(a) of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley Act, except that in ap- |
| 18 | plying such section for purposes of this title— |
| 19 | (1) the term "bank" shall have the meaning |
| 20 | given in subsection (a) of this section; and |
| 21 | (2) the term "qualified investor" means eligible |
| 22 | contract participant (as defined in section $1a(12)$ of |
| 23 | the Commodity Exchange Act, as in effect on the |
| 24 | date of the enactment of the Commodity Futures |
| 25 | Modernization Act of 2000). |

(c) HYBRID INSTRUMENT.—In this title, the term
 "hybrid instrument" means an identified banking product
 not excluded by section 403 of this Act, offered by a bank,
 having one or more payments indexed to the value, level,
 or rate of, or providing for the delivery of, one or more
 commodities (as defined in section 1a(4) of the Com modity Exchange Act).

8 (d) COVERED SWAP AGREEMENT.—In this title, the 9 term "covered swap agreement" means a swap agreement 10 (as defined in section 206(b) of the Gramm-Leach-Bliley 11 Act), including a credit or equity swap, based on a com-12 modity other than an agricultural commodity enumerated 13 in section 1a(4) of the Commodity Exchange Act if—

14 (1) the swap agreement—

(A) is entered into only between persons
that are eligible contract participants (as defined in section 1a(12) of the Commodity Exchange Act, as in effect on the date of the enactment of the Commodity Futures Modernization Act of 2000) at the time the persons enter
into the swap agreement; and

(B) is not entered into or executed on a
trading facility (as defined in section 1a(33) of
the Commodity Exchange Act); or

25 (2) the swap agreement—

| 1 | (A) is entered into or executed on an elec- |
|----|---|
| 2 | tronic trading facility (as defined in section |
| 3 | 1a(10) of the Commodity Exchange Act); |
| 4 | (B) is entered into on a principal-to-prin- |
| 5 | cipal basis between parties trading for their |
| 6 | own accounts or as described in section |
| 7 | 1a(12)(B)(ii) of the Commodity Exchange Act; |
| 8 | (C) is entered into only between persons |
| 9 | that are eligible contract participants as de- |
| 10 | scribed in subparagraph (A), (B)(ii), or (C) of |
| 11 | section 1a(12) of the Commodity Exchange Act, |
| 12 | as in effect on the date of the enactment of the |
| 13 | Commodity Futures Modernization Act of 2000, |
| 14 | at the time the persons enter into the swap |
| 15 | agreement; and |
| 16 | (D) is an agreement, contract or trans- |
| 17 | action in an excluded commodity (as defined in |
| 18 | section $1a(13)$ of the Commodity Exchange |
| 19 | Act). |
| 20 | SEC. 403. EXCLUSION OF IDENTIFIED BANKING PRODUCTS |
| 21 | COMMONLY OFFERED ON OR BEFORE DE- |
| 22 | CEMBER 5, 2000. |
| 23 | No provision of the Commodity Exchange Act shall |
| 24 | apply to, and the Commodity Futures Trading Commis- |

sion shall not exercise regulatory authority with respect
 to, an identified banking product if—

3 (1) an appropriate banking agency certifies that
4 the product has been commonly offered, entered
5 into, or provided in the United States by any bank
6 on or before December 5, 2000, under applicable
7 banking law; and

8 (2) the product was not prohibited by the Com-9 modity Exchange Act and not regulated by the Com-10 modity Futures Trading Commission as a contract 11 of sale of a commodity for future delivery (or an op-12 tion on such a contract) or an option on a com-13 modity, on or before December 5, 2000.

14 SEC. 404. EXCLUSION OF CERTAIN IDENTIFIED BANKING
15 PRODUCTS OFFERED BY BANKS AFTER DE16 CEMBER 5, 2000.

No provision of the Commodity Exchange Act shall
apply to, and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission shall not exercise regulatory authority with respect
to, an identified banking product which had not been commonly offered, entered into, or provided in the United
States by any bank on or before December 5, 2000, under
applicable banking law if—

(1) the product has no payment indexed to thevalue, level, or rate of, and does not provide for the

| 1 | delivery of, any commodity (as defined in section |
|----|---|
| 2 | 1a(4) of the Commodity Exchange Act); or |
| 3 | (2) the product or commodity is otherwise ex- |
| 4 | cluded from the Commodity Exchange Act. |
| 5 | SEC. 405. EXCLUSION OF CERTAIN OTHER IDENTIFIED |
| 6 | BANKING PRODUCTS. |
| 7 | (a) IN GENERAL.—No provision of the Commodity |
| 8 | Exchange Act shall apply to, and the Commodity Futures |
| 9 | Trading Commission shall not exercise regulatory author- |
| 10 | ity with respect to, a banking product if the product is |
| 11 | a hybrid instrument that is predominantly a banking prod- |
| 12 | uct under the predominance test set forth in subsection |
| 13 | (b). |

(b) PREDOMINANCE TEST.—A hybrid instrument
shall be considered to be predominantly a banking product
for purposes of this section if—

(1) the issuer of the hybrid instrument receives
payment in full of the purchase price of the hybrid
instrument substantially contemporaneously with delivery of the hybrid instrument;

(2) the purchaser or holder of the hybrid instrument is not required to make under the terms
of the instrument, or any arrangement referred to in
the instrument, any payment to the issuer in addition to the purchase price referred to in paragraph

(1), whether as margin, settlement payment, or oth erwise during the life of the hybrid instrument or at
 maturity;

4 (3) the issuer of the hybrid instrument is not
5 subject by the terms of the instrument to mark-to6 market margining requirements; and

7 (4) the hybrid instrument is not marketed as a
8 contract of sale of a commodity for future delivery
9 (or option on such a contract) subject to the Com10 modity Exchange Act.

11 (c) MARK-TO-MARKET MARGINING REQUIREMENT.— 12 For purposes of subsection (b)(3), mark-to-market margining requirements shall not include the obligation of an 13 issuer of a secured debt instrument to increase the amount 14 15 of collateral held in pledge for the benefit of the purchaser 16 of the secured debt instrument to secure the repayment 17 obligations of the issuer under the secured debt instru-18 ment.

19 SEC. 406. ADMINISTRATION OF THE PREDOMINANCE TEST.

(a) IN GENERAL.—No provision of the Commodity
Exchange Act shall apply to, and the Commodity Futures
Trading Commission shall not regulate, a hybrid instrument, unless the Commission determines, by or under a
rule issued in accordance with this section, that—

| 1 | (1) the action is necessary and appropriate in |
|----|---|
| 2 | the public interest; |
| 3 | (2) the action is consistent with the Commodity |
| 4 | Exchange Act and the purposes of the Commodity |
| 5 | Exchange Act; and |
| 6 | (3) the hybrid instrument is not predominantly |
| 7 | a banking product under the predominance test set |
| 8 | forth in section 405(b) of this Act. |
| 9 | (b) Consultation.—Before commencing a rule- |
| 10 | making or making a determination pursuant to a rule |
| 11 | issued under this title, the Commodity Futures Trading |
| 12 | Commission shall consult with and seek the concurrence |
| 13 | of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System |
| 14 | concerning— |
| 15 | (1) the nature of the hybrid instrument; and |
| 16 | (2) the history, purpose, extent, and appro- |
| 17 | priateness of the regulation of the hybrid instrument |
| 18 | under the Commodity Exchange Act and under ap- |
| 19 | propriate banking laws. |
| 20 | (c) Objection to Commission Regulation.— |
| 21 | (1) FILING OF PETITION FOR REVIEW.—The |
| 22 | Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System |
| 23 | may obtain review of any rule or determination re- |
| 24 | ferred to in subsection (a) in the United States |
| 25 | Court of Appeals for the District of Columbia Cir- |
| | |

cuit by filing in the court, not later than 60 days
after the date of publication of the rule or determination, a written petition requesting that the rule
or determination be set aside. Any proceeding to
challenge any such rule or determination shall be expedited by the court.

7 (2)TRANSMITTAL OF PETITION AND 8 RECORD.—A copy of a petition described in para-9 graph (1) shall be transmitted as soon as possible by 10 the Clerk of the court to an officer or employee of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission des-11 12 ignated for that purpose. Upon receipt of the peti-13 tion, the Commission shall file with the court the 14 rule or determination under review and any docu-15 ments referred to therein, and any other relevant 16 materials prescribed by the court.

17 (3) EXCLUSIVE JURISDICTION.—On the date of
18 the filing of a petition under paragraph (1), the
19 court shall have jurisdiction, which shall become ex20 clusive on the filing of the materials set forth in
21 paragraph (2), to affirm and enforce or to set aside
22 the rule or determination at issue.

(4) STANDARD OF REVIEW.—The court shall
determine to affirm and enforce or set aside a rule
or determination of the Commodity Futures Trading

| | 200 |
|----|--|
| 1 | Commission under this section, based on the deter- |
| 2 | mination of the court as to whether— |
| 3 | (A) the subject product is predominantly a |
| 4 | banking product; and |
| 5 | (B) making the provision or provisions of |
| 6 | the Commodity Exchange Act at issue applica- |
| 7 | ble to the subject instrument is appropriate in |
| 8 | light of the history, purpose, and extent of reg- |
| 9 | ulation under such Act, this title, and under the |
| 10 | appropriate banking laws, giving deference nei- |
| 11 | ther to the views of the Commodity Futures |
| 12 | Trading Commission nor the Board of Gov- |
| 13 | ernors of the Federal Reserve System. |
| 14 | (5) JUDICIAL STAY.—The filing of a petition by |
| 15 | the Board pursuant to paragraph (1) shall operate |
| 16 | as a judicial stay, until the date on which the deter- |
| 17 | mination of the court is final (including any appeal |
| 18 | of the determination). |
| 19 | (6) OTHER AUTHORITY TO CHALLENGE.—Any |
| 20 | aggrieved party may seek judicial review pursuant to |
| 21 | section 6(c) of the Commodity Exchange Act of a |
| 22 | determination or rulemaking by the Commodity Fu- |
| 23 | tures Trading Commission under this section. |
| | |

1 SEC. 407. EXCLUSION OF COVERED SWAP AGREEMENTS.

No provision of the Commodity Exchange Act (other than section 5b of such Act with respect to the clearing of covered swap agreements) shall apply to, and the Commodity Futures Trading Commission shall not exercise regulatory authority with respect to, a covered swap agreement offered, entered into, or provided by a bank.

8 SEC. 408. CONTRACT ENFORCEMENT.

9 (a) HYBRID INSTRUMENTS.—No hybrid instrument 10 shall be void, voidable, or unenforceable, and no party to 11 a hybrid instrument shall be entitled to rescind, or recover 12 any payment made with respect to, a hybrid instrument 13 under any provision of Federal or State law, based solely on the failure of the hybrid instrument to satisfy the pre-14 dominance test set forth in section 405(b) of this Act or 15 16 to comply with the terms or conditions of an exemption or exclusion from any provision of the Commodity Ex-17 18 change Act or any regulation of the Commodity Futures 19 Trading Commission.

(b) COVERED SWAP AGREEMENTS.—No covered
swap agreement shall be void, voidable, or unenforceable,
and no party to a covered swap agreement shall be entitled
to rescind, or recover any payment made with respect to,
a covered swap agreement under any provision of Federal
or State law, based solely on the failure of the covered
swap agreement to comply with the terms or conditions

of an exemption or exclusion from any provision of the
 Commodity Exchange Act or any regulation of the Com modity Futures Trading Commission.

4 (c) PREEMPTION.—This title shall supersede and pre-5 empt the application of any State or local law that pro-6 hibits or regulates gaming or the operation of bucket 7 shops (other than antifraud provisions of general applica-8 bility) in the case of—

9 (1) a hybrid instrument that is predominantly10 a banking product; or

11 (2) a covered swap agreement.

 \bigcirc